NATIONAL GUIDELINES
FOR THE MANAGEMENT OF
CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASES

Republic of Ghana

Ministry of Health
First Edition 2019
FOREWORD

Non-communicable diseases (NCDs) account for 60% of the 58 million deaths worldwide; 80% of which occur in low- and middle-income countries (LMIC). People in LMICs tend to get NCDs at younger ages, suffer longer and die sooner than those in high income countries. Almost half of all NCD deaths are attributable to cardiovascular diseases (CVDs).

In sub-Saharan Africa, individuals at high risk of CVDs are usually at the peak of their productive years. As a low to middle income country in sub-Saharan Africa, the topic of CVDs is an extremely important one for Ghana.

The health system in Ghana is confronted with a double burden of diseases. A high prevalence of infectious diseases still exists while there is a growing prevalence of chronic NCDs.

The vision of the health sector in Ghana is to have a healthy population for national development. The objectives of the Ghana NCD Policy 2011 include reducing the incidence of chronic NCDs; reducing the unhealthy lifestyles that contribute to NCDs; reducing morbidity associated with NCDs and improving the overall quality of life in persons with NCDs.

On the achievement of this milestone of the development of national guidelines for the assessment of risk and management of CVDs in Ghana, I congratulate all parties involved and call on all concerned health workers to adhere to this standard and by so doing contribute to reducing morbidity and mortality related to NCDs in Ghana.

Hon. Kwaku Agyeman-Manu (MP)

Minister for Health
Ghana

December 2019
Cardiovascular diseases (CVDs) are a growing public health problem in Ghana and other African countries. Strokes and other CVDs have become a leading cause of death due to increasing risk factors such as hypertension. According to the Global Burden of Disease study (GBD), ischaemic heart disease was the fourth leading cause of death in Ghana in 2016. The prevalence of hypertension, a major risk factor for CVDs, is increasing rapidly and ranges from 19% to 48%, according to the Ghana Health Service Annual Report, 2017, due to rising life expectancy and the increasing prevalence of contributing factors such as overweight/obesity. Early diagnosis and adequate management of the risk factors can reduce the fatal consequences of CVDs.

At the heart of improving risk assessment and management of CVDs are nationally approved guidelines, which facilitate standardisation of care approaches.

These guidelines developed by experts from all levels of health care and stakeholders capture all recommended approaches and necessary information for clinicians and other healthcare workers on CVDs. They also serve as a practical guide for assessing and managing the most important CVDs prevalent in Ghana and can be used at all levels of care namely health facilities without a doctor; with a general practitioner and with a physician specialist.

We hope that these guidelines will prove to be a useful and a beneficial tool for all its users.

Dr. Patrick Kuma-Aboagye
Director-General
Ghana Health Service

December 2019
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

We wish to express our heartfelt gratitude to the following institutions and individuals, who have contributed in diverse ways towards the successful development of these guidelines:

- The Minister, Hon. Kwaku Agyeman-Manu (MP) and the Ministry of Health for providing overall guidance for the development process.
- The Director General, Dr. Anthony Nsiah-Asare and the Ghana Health Service for their support that ensured a successful development process.
- The Dean, Prof. Margaret Larney and the University of Ghana School of Medicine and Dentistry for providing technical assistance.
- The CEO, Dr. Daniel Asare and Korle Bu Teaching Hospital for their support to ensure a successful development process.
- The Ghanaian Society of Cardiology for providing technical input.
- Deutsche Gesellschaft für Internationale Zusammenarbeit (GIZ) GmbH, for providing technical expertise and operational management of the CVD guideline development process and the entire Ghana Heart Initiative (GHI) team.

We wish to acknowledge as well the following persons/groups for their tremendous contributions in the development of these guidelines:

MINISTRY OF HEALTH
Nana Kwabena Adjei-Mensah Chief Director
Dr. Emmanuel Ankrah Odame Ag. Director, Policy Planning Monitoring and Evaluation (PPME)
Dr. Baffour Awuah NCD Advisor to the Minister of Health
Alhaji Inua Yusuf Legal Unit
Office of the Chief Director

GHANA HEALTH SERVICE
Dr. Koku Awoonor Director, Policy Planning Monitoring and Evaluation Division (PPMED)
Dr. Charity Sarpong Regional Director of Health Services, Greater Accra Region (GAR)
Ms. Sarah Amisah-Bamfo Deputy Director, Clinical Care Division, Greater Accra Regional Health Directorate
Mr. Emmanuel Asare Quality Focal Person, Greater Accra Regional Health Directorate
Office of the Director General

NCD CONTROL PROGRAMME
Dr. Dennis Laryea Programme Manager
Dr. Mary Commeh Deputy Programme Manager

GHANA HEART INITIATIVE GOVERNANCE COMMITTEE
Prof. Jacob Plange-Rhule Chair of GHI Governance Committee/Rector, Ghana College of Physicians and Surgeons (GCPS)
Dr. Koku Awoonor Director, PPMED, GHS
Dr. Baffour Awuah NCD Advisor to Minister for Health
Prof. Fred Binka University of Health and Allied Sciences (UHAS)
Dr. Dennis Laryea Manager, NCD Control Programme
Prof. Mark Tettey University of Ghana School of Medicine and Dentistry
COORDINATOR OF GUIDELINE DEVELOPMENT
Dr. Cynthia Bannerman

GUIDELINE WRITERS
Dr. Aba Folson Greater Accra Regional Hospital, Ridge
Dr. Abdul-Samed Tanko Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Alexander Baafi Agyekum Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Alfred Doku Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Collins Kokuro Komfo Anokye Teaching Hospital
Dr. Desrie Delsol–Gyan Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Dzidzo Afi Anaglate Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Eugene Amable Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Fiifi Duodu Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Francis Agyekum La General Hospital
Dr. Isaac Nana Ogyefo Komfo Anokye Teaching Hospital
Prof. Isaac Owusu Komfo Anokye Teaching Hospital
Dr. Jane Afriyie–Mensah Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Joseph Akamah Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Josephine Akpalu UGSMD/Korle-Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Kwaku Obeng Amponsah Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Lambert Tetteh Appiah Komfo Anokye Teaching Hospital
Dr. Martin Adu–Adadey Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Mary Commeh Non–Communicable Disease Control Programme, GHS
Dr. Michael Adomako Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Nana Adjoa Moniku Coleman Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Nana–Akyaa Yao Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Patrick Adjei Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Patrick Opoku Berchie Komfo Anokye Teaching Hospital
Dr. Prince Boahene Komfo Anokye Teaching Hospital
Dr. Roberta Lamptey Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Vincent Boima Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Yaw Adu–Boakye Komfo Anokye Teaching Hospital

GUIDELINE REVIEWERS
Dr. Baffour Awuah Ministry of Health
Prof. Bernard C. Nkum Komfo Anokye Teaching Hospital
Prof. David Ofori-Adjei University of Ghana Medical School
Dr. Dennis Laryea Non–Communicable Disease Control Programme, GHS
Prof. Francis Ofei University of Cape Coast School of Medical Sciences
Prof. Frank Edwin University of Health and Allied Sciences, Ho
Dr. Franklin Acheampong Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Yaw Ofori-Adjei Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
CONTRIBUTORS

Dr. Aba Amoasiwah Ghansah Weija-Gbawe Municipal Hospital
Dr. Abdul-Subir Yakubu Tamale Teaching Hospital, Tamale
Ms. Adwoa Addai-Acheampong Tuobodom Health Centre, Techiman North
Mr. Alhassan Abdul Kadiri Pusiga Health Centre
Dr. Amoasiwah Aba Ghansah Ga South Municipal Hospital
Dr. Arnold Osei-Wusu St. Patrick's Hospital, Offinso-Ashanti
Ms. Asabea Opare-Appiah Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Ato Yeboah Ada East District Hospital
Mrs. Belinda Marian Mensah National Health Insurance Authority
Mr. Benson A.K. Tseganu Dedeso CHPS, Eastern
Mrs. Constance Addo-Quaye National Health Insurance Authority
Dr. Dzifa Ahadzi Tamale Teaching Hospital, Tamale
Ms. Edith Gavor Ghana National Drugs Programme, MOH
Dr. Edmund Acquaye Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Ms. Emma Antwi GHS-Greater Accra Region
Mr. Emmanuel Asare GHS-Greater Accra Region
Ms. Ernestina N L Anderson La General Hospital
Dr. Eszter Ami Momade Cape Coast Teaching Hospital
Dr. F. Amah Nkansah Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Fathia Karim Korle-Bu Teaching Hospital
Ms. Faustina Opoku Nyanyano Health Centre, Gomoa East
Mr. Frank Quartey University of Ghana
Dr. Fredrick Asomani Akoto St. Gregory Catholic Hospital, Gomoa Budumburam
Dr. George Peprah Takoradi Regional Hospital, Takoradi
Dr. Jacob Omari Appah Omari Health Centre
Prof. Jacob Plange-Rhue Ghana College of Physicians and Surgeons
Dr. James Duah Christian Health Association of Ghana
Dr. Janice Acheampong Police Hospital
Mr. Jerry Fiave Ghana Health Service -Health Promotion
Mr. Joshua A. Akpilima Jirapa Health Centre
Mr. Justice Kwesi Baah Ghana Coalition of NGOs in Health
Ms. Lily Atakora Prampram Polyclinic
Ms. Loretta M Donkor Afienya CHPS
Prof. M.O. Mate-Kole Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Mama Aflo Vuiede II Queen of Mafi Aflokope, Volta Region
Mr. Mark Amankwa Harrison Korle Bu Teaching Hospital
Dr. Mavis Sakyi Legon Hospital, Accra
Ms. Mercy Abekah Mensah Nyanso CHPS, Tarkwa Nsuaem
Dr. Momodu Cham Faith Based Groups
Dr. Naa Klotefo Clottey Ga West Municipal Authority Hospital
Nana Obuobi I Traditional ruler, Queen mother, Mayera, Greater Accra
Nana Tsetse Agyeman IV Queen mother, Nii Djanwe, Greater Accra
4 CARDIAC ARREST 46

4.1 Introduction 47
4.2 Clinical presentation of cardiac arrest 49
4.3 Management of cardiac arrest according to level of care 49

5 DISEASES 54

5.1 HYPERTENSION 54
5.1.1 Introduction 55
i. Definition 55
ii. Epidemiology 55
iii. Classification 55
5.1.2 Aetiology 55
5.1.3 Clinical presentation 57
i. Symptoms 57
ii. Signs 57
5.1.4 Complications of hypertension 57
5.1.5 Management of hypertension relevant for all levels of care 58
i. Investigation 58
ii. Non-pharmacological treatment for all levels of care 59
5.1.6 Management of hypertension according to level of care 60
5.1.7 Resistant hypertension 66
5.1.8 Hypertensive emergency 66
5.1.9 Patient Information/education at all levels 72
5.1.10 Prevention of hypertension 72

5.2 STROKE 74
5.2.1 Introduction 75
i. Definition 75
ii. Epidemiology 75
iii. Classification of strokes 75
iv. Aetiology 76
v. Risk factors 76
5.2.2 Clinical presentation 77
5.2.3 Management according to level of care 78
5.2.4 Complications of stroke 86
5.2.5 Referral 86
5.2.6 Patient education and prevention 87

5.3 CHEST PAIN, CORONARY ARTERY DISEASE AND MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION 92
5.3.1 Introduction 93
i. Definition 93
ii. Epidemiology 93
5.3.2 Stable coronary artery disease 93
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3</td>
<td>Management of stable CAD</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.</td>
<td>Treatment objectives</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>Management according to level of care</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.4</td>
<td>Patient education/information</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.5</td>
<td>Prevention of stable CAD</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.6</td>
<td>Acute coronary syndromes (ACS)</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>Aetiology</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>Symptoms</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv.</td>
<td>Differential diagnoses of ACS</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v.</td>
<td>Management</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>va.</td>
<td>Treatment objectives</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>Management according to level of care</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>HEART FAILURE</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.</td>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>Epidemiology</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>Classification of heart failure</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.2</td>
<td>Aetiology</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.</td>
<td>Clinical presentation</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>Symptoms and signs</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.4</td>
<td>Aspects of management relevant for all levels of care</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.</td>
<td>Non-pharmacological treatment relevant for all levels</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.5</td>
<td>Management according to level of care</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>VENOUS THROMBOEMBOLISM</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.</td>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>Epidemiology</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>Risk factors</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5.2</td>
<td>Deep vein thrombosis</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.</td>
<td>Clinical presentation</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>Management according to level of care</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5.3</td>
<td>Acute pulmonary embolism (PE)</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.</td>
<td>Classification of acute PE</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>Clinical presentation</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>Management according to level of care</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5.4</td>
<td>Management of VTE in special populations (relevant for all levels of care)</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5.5</td>
<td>Prevention of VTEs</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>ACUTE RHEUMATIC FEVER</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.</td>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>Epidemiology</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>Aetiology</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6.2</td>
<td>Clinical presentation</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6.3</td>
<td>Management according to level of care</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6.4</td>
<td>Secondary prevention (applies for health facilities with a doctor and a physician specialist)</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>RHEUMATIC HEART DISEASE</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.</td>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>Epidemiology</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>Classification</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7.2</td>
<td>Aetiology</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7.3</td>
<td>Symptoms and signs</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.</td>
<td>Mitral regurgitation (MR)</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>Mitral stenosis</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>Aortic regurgitation (AR)</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv.</td>
<td>Aortic stenosis</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v.</td>
<td>Tricuspid regurgitation (TR)</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>Pulmonary valve</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7.4</td>
<td>Management according to level of care</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7.5</td>
<td>Patient information</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>INFECTIVE ENDOCARDITIS</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.8.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.</td>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>Classification</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>Risk factors</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.8.2</td>
<td>Aetiology</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.8.3</td>
<td>Clinical presentation</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.8.4</td>
<td>Management according to level of care</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.8.5</td>
<td>Complications</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.8.6</td>
<td>Prevention</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.8.7</td>
<td>Patient information/education</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.9</td>
<td>CARDIAC ARRHYTHMIAS</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.9.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.</td>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>Epidemiology</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>Classification of arrhythmias</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.9.2</td>
<td>Aetiology</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.9.3</td>
<td>Clinical presentation</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.</td>
<td>Symptoms and signs</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.9.4 Basic investigation according to level of care 174
5.9.5 Tachyarrhythmias: general overview 175
i. Management according to level of care 175
ii. Atrial fibrillation 178
iii. Atrial flutter 181
iv. Management of paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia 182
v. Management of ventricular tachyarrhythmia in stable patients 183
vi. Management of ventricular fibrillation health facility with a doctor/physician specialist 185
5.9.6 Bradyarrhythmias 186
i. Sinus bradycardia 186
ii. Atrioventricular block 186
iii. Sick sinus syndrome (sinus node dysfunction) 188
5.9.7 Prevention 190
5.9.8 Patient information/education 190

LIST OF TABLES 192
LIST OF FIGURES 194
ANNEX 1 196
ANNEX 2 197
1 INTRODUCTION
1.1 CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE BURDEN

Non-communicable diseases such as heart diseases, stroke, diabetes, cancers, respiratory diseases, injuries, etc accounts for 60% of the 58 million deaths worldwide; 80% of these deaths occur in low- and middle-income countries (LMIC). People in LMICs tend to get NCDs at younger ages, suffer longer, and die sooner than those in high income countries. Almost half of NCD deaths are attributable to cardiovascular diseases (hypertension, stroke, heart attack, heart failure, etc).

Globally, cardiovascular diseases (CVDs) are the number one cause of death. According to statistics from the World Health Organisation (WHO), CVDs were responsible for about 17.9 million (31%) deaths worldwide in 2016. Heart attack (myocardial infarction) and stroke contributed to 85% of these deaths\(^1\). Modernisation in societies (fast foods, sedentary lifestyle, technologies, etc.) brings along changes in behaviour and lifestyle, and consequently changes in the health and disease patterns\(^2,3\). The major population risk factors for CVDs include age, smoking, history of hypertension or diabetes mellitus, obesity, unhealthy diet, alcohol misuse, lack of physical activity, dyslipidaemia, family history of heart disease, ethnicity/race and psychosocial factors\(^4,5\).

LMICs are the most affected by CVDs. Globally, about 80% of CVD-related deaths as well as 87% of CVD-related disabilities occur in LMICs\(^5\). Although high income countries have put in place measures that are working to decrease their CVD rates, the same cannot be said for LMICs\(^4\). Between 1990 and 2013, sub-saharan Africa remained the only part of the world that had an increase in the CVD-related deaths\(^5\).

CVD related deaths in sub-saharan Africa continue to increase with stroke being responsible for nearly half a million deaths in 2012\(^2\). Sub-saharan Africa is also known to record the world’s highest prevalence of rheumatic heart disease (RHD) i.e. 15-20 per 1000 people\(^6\). Hypertension, the leading risk factor for CVDs, is rising rapidly and has been predicted to increase by 60% among adults by 2025\(^4\).
1.2 EFFORTS TO REDUCE CVD RELATED DEATHS
In sub-Saharan Africa, individuals at high risk of CVDs are usually at the peak of their productive years. There are local and international efforts to improve the control of NCDs through lifestyle modification coupled with early detection and management. The Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) aim to ensure healthy lives and promote well-being for all.

The Ghana NCD Policy 2011 has the following objectives:
- To reduce the incidence of chronic NCDs
- To reduce the unhealthy lifestyles that contribute to NCDs
- To reduce morbidity associated with NCDs
- To improve the overall quality of life of persons with NCDs

1.3 PURPOSE AND IMPORTANCE OF CVD GUIDELINES
About three quarters of the world’s CVD-related deaths occur in LMIC like Ghana. This is mainly because the health facilities in these countries are not well equipped to detect CVDs early and properly manage them. High income countries have integrated primary health care programmes that aid in the early diagnosis and treatment of CVDs and other NCDs.

In Ghana, there are no standardised guidelines dedicated to the management of CVDs. Apart from improving health care through capacity building, provision of guidelines to health workers and its proper implementation can greatly reduce the morbidity and mortality associated with CVDs. The CVD guidelines will serve as an essential tool that assist the health workers to manage CVDs and streamline the referral process as it will give guidance on referrals as well.

1.4 PROCESSES IN THE DEVELOPMENT OF CVD GUIDELINES
These guidelines are developed by the relevant stakeholders: The Ministry of Health, the Ghana Health Service, the NCD Control Programme, the Korle-Bu Teaching Hospital, University of Ghana School of Medicine and Dentistry, the Ghanaian Society of Cardiology.

The processes involved in the development of these guidelines include:
- Stakeholder planning workshop
- Stakeholder selection of the relevant topics
- Selection of writers, reviewers and editorial team
- Development of draft CVD guideline
- Stakeholder review and recommendation
- Final version submission to Ministry of Health
- Approval of the guidelines for use in Ghana

1.5 LEVEL OF EVIDENCE (LOE)
The recommendations made for the management of CVDs in these guidelines were based on data from studies or research. The weight of evidence is graded A to C as shown in table 1 below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level of evidence</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Level of evidence A</td>
<td>Data derived from multiple randomized clinical trials or meta-analyses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level of evidence B</td>
<td>Data derived from single randomized clinical trial or large non-randomized studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level of evidence C</td>
<td>Consensus of the experts and/or small studies, retrospective studies, registries</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.6 STRUCTURE/ORGANIZATION OF CVD GUIDELINES

The CVD guidelines begin with an introduction, which describes the burden of CVDs globally and narrows down to Ghana. It highlights the need for having national CVD guidelines as well as the importance of each level of healthcare in the management of CVDs. The document continues to describe CVD risk assessment and prevention, symptoms and signs of CVDs and details nine CVDs that are of high public health importance in Ghana. The structure is summarised below:

Structure of the CVD Guidelines:
1. Introduction
2. Cardiovascular diseases risk, assessment and prevention
3. Symptoms and signs of cardiovascular diseases
4. Cardiac arrest
5. Diseases
   5.1 Hypertension
   5.2 Stroke
   5.3 Chest pain, coronary artery disease and myocardial infarction
   5.4 Heart failure
   5.5 Venous thromboembolism
   5.6 Acute rheumatic fever
   5.7 Rheumatic heart disease
   5.8 Infective endocarditis
   5.9 Cardiac arrhythmias

1.6.1 LEVELS OF CARE

The levels of care and facilities available vary from region to region. The Essential Medicine List (EML) of Ghana has 7 categories of prescription to bring clarity to the medicine that can be prescribed at various levels. These categorizations include:

Level A Community-based health planning and services (CHPS; the lowest level)
Level M Midwifery
Level B1 Health centre without doctor
Level B2 Health centre with doctor
Level C District hospital
Level D Regional/teaching hospital
Level SM Specialist medicines

To enhance ease of recommendation of therapy at various levels of care in Ghana, the stakeholders recommended the following levels for this CVD guideline:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Level 0</td>
<td>For all levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>Health facility without a doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 2</td>
<td>Health facility with a doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 3</td>
<td>Health facility with a physician specialist or family physician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Health facility with cardiologists and high sophisticated equipment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

➔ Management of diseases for the different levels is clearly indicated by the respective colour for easy use of the guidelines.
➔ Medicines outside the scope of the essential medicines list (EML) are clearly indicated by the diamond symbol *. 
1.7 RECOMMENDED RESOURCES NEEDED FOR CVD MANAGEMENT

The WHO’s technical package for CVD management in primary health care recommends the following technologies/resources, tools and medications for primary health care facilities (for primary care facilities with only non-physician health workers, most of the medicines below are required for refill of prescriptions issued by physicians at a higher level of care).

Table 2: Various levels of care and recommended resources

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resources needed</th>
<th>Health facility without a doctor Level 1</th>
<th>Health facility with a doctor Level 2</th>
<th>Health facility with a specialist Level 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diagnostic equipment</td>
<td>- Blood pressure (BP) machine&lt;br&gt; - Stethoscope&lt;br&gt; - Glucometer and strips&lt;br&gt; - A weighing scale&lt;br&gt; - A tape measure&lt;br&gt; - A stadiometer (for height assessment)&lt;br&gt; - Waist/hip charts&lt;br&gt; - Body Mass Index (BMI) charts&lt;br&gt; - Thermometer&lt;br&gt; - CVD risk assessment tools&lt;br&gt; - Strips for urinalysis</td>
<td>- Equipment in Level 1&lt;br&gt; - Haematology equipment and reagents&lt;br&gt; - Biochemistry equipment and reagents&lt;br&gt; - Ophthalmoscope&lt;br&gt; - X-ray&lt;br&gt; - Electrocardiograph (ECG) machine</td>
<td>- Equipment in levels 1 and 2&lt;br&gt; - Echocardiogram machine (high specification)&lt;br&gt; - Blood analysis: fasting blood sugar, electrolytes, creatinine, cholesterol and lipoproteins&lt;br&gt; - Cardiac catheterisation lab&lt;br&gt; - Ambulatory BP&lt;br&gt; - Holter machine&lt;br&gt; - Treadmill&lt;br&gt; - Facilities for telemedicine&lt;br&gt; - A critical care unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medications</td>
<td>- Thiazide-like diuretic&lt;br&gt; - Calcium–channel blocker (eg. Nifedipine, Amlodipine)</td>
<td>- Diuretics (including Spironolactone and Furosemide)&lt;br&gt; - Beta-blockers (eg. Bisoprolol, Metoprolol)&lt;br&gt; - Digoxin&lt;br&gt; - Warfarin&lt;br&gt; - Clopidogrel&lt;br&gt; - Statins (eg. Atorvastatin)&lt;br&gt; - ACEI/ARB (eg. Lisinopril, Losartan)&lt;br&gt; - Furosemide&lt;br&gt; - Aspirin</td>
<td>- CVD risk medications&lt;br&gt; - Heart failure medications&lt;br&gt; - Antiarrhythmic medications&lt;br&gt; - Antiplatelets&lt;br&gt; - Advanced cardiac life support medications</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.8 CARDIAC ARREST AND EMERGENCY RESPONSE CAPACITY

Cardiac arrest can occur at anytime and any place in seeming healthy individuals. The general public and the health system in Ghana should build capacity in manpower, infrastructure and system to manage cardiac arrest. The capacity building should include but not be limited to:

1. Training of pupils and students of primary, secondary and tertiary educational institutions in basic life support (BLS).
2. Training of commercial drivers and security agencies in first aid and basic life support (BLS).
3. Provision of Automated External Defibrillators (AED) at large institutions such as banks, schools, churches, mosques, airports, ports/harbours and ministries.
4. Training of health professionals in basic and advance resuscitation:
   - Pre-service training of Community Health Workers (CHO), midwives and nurses in basic life support (BLS) and training of physician assistants and doctors in advance cardiac life support (ACLS)
   - In-service training (continuous professional development (CPD)) of CHO, midwives and nurses in basic life support (BLS), and training of physician assistants and doctors in advance cardiac life support (ACLS)
5. Formation of emergency response teams in health facilities.
   Each health facility should have a dedicated team to respond to emergencies at various units. The team
   should be able to respond to emergencies within 5 minutes. This requires that for each day and shift, there
   would be a team with requisite skills, equipment and medications to respond to emergencies.

6. Paramedics should have requisite training and skills in resuscitation.

7. Ambulances should have the requisite equipment and medicines necessary for resuscitation and care of
   the sick.

8. Clear lines of communication between the referring and receiving health institutions to ensure continuity
   of care and to prevent unnecessary delays.

1.9 PRESCRIPTION WRITING

Medicine is to be prescribed only when they are necessary in the management of a patient following a clear or
probable diagnosis. In all cases, the benefit of administering the medicine should be considered in relation to
the risk involved. This is particularly important in special patient populations such as pregnant women when
the risk of both mother and foetus must be considered.

Standard prescriptions should:
- Be written legibly in ink
- Be dated
- State the full name (and address if possible) of the patient
- Specify the age and weight of the patient (especially in the case of children)
- Bear the generic name of the medication and the required dosage.
- Be written completely by the prescriber (certified) and not left for another person to complete
- Be signed in ink by the certified prescriber
- Bear the contact details of the prescriber (e.g., name, facility name and telephone number)

The following should be noted when writing a prescription:
- Names of medicines and preparations should be written in full
- Generic names should always be used as advised by these guidelines
- Avoid the use of unnecessary decimal points (e.g. 5mg and not 5.0mg)
- Where decimals are unavoidable, use a zero in front of the decimal point where there is no other
  figure (0.5ml and not .5ml)
- Quantities of 1 gram or more should be written in grams (e.g. 1g, 4g)
- Quantities less than 1 gram should be written in milligrams (e.g. 500mg and not 0.5g)
- Quantities less than 1mg should be written in micrograms (e.g. 500micrograms and not 0.5mg)
- ‘Micrograms’ and ‘nanograms’ should not be abbreviated; similarly, ‘units’ should not be abbreviated
- Use the term millilitre and not cubic centimetre
- State the dose and dosing frequency clearly
- State the quantity to be supplied and/or indicate the number of days of treatment required.
- Clearly state the route of administration; avoid the use of the parenteral route of administration ex-
  cept where there are clear clinical indications for this route; use the oral route whenever possible
1.10 REFERRAL
Primum non nocere! First, do no harm!
To better serve patients, it is vital that healthcare professionals know when to refer appropriately for next level or specialized management. These guidelines make provision for referral of patients to other health facilities.

Patients should be referred if:
1. The health facility lacks the appropriate resources needed for the diagnosis and management of the patient in the form of:
   - Lack of expertise/qualified health workers
   - Lack of appropriate diagnostic tools
   - Lack of appropriate medication
2. The patient and family request for second opinion or different level of care

Patients should be referred in accordance with agreed arrangements to facilities where the necessary competence, diagnostic tools and support exist.

➔ Notification and prior discussion of the case should be undertaken to ensure that the receiving health facility is adequately prepared for continuity of care.

The referral letter should consist of:
- Date
- Name and contact of physician/health worker and institution the patient is referred from
- Name of patient, age, sex, contact of relative
- Reason for referral
- The patient’s history, clinical findings, test results and prior treatment
- The provisional diagnosis
- Initial treatment given
- Signature of the referring physician/health worker

➔ The referral letter should be structured clearly with headings so that the receiving clinician will find the relevant information easily.
➔ See annex 1 (page 196) for a copy of the referral letter.
➔ It is recommended that feedback is given to the referring clinician/health facility to help advice on future management of the patient and other patients.

Feedback should include:
- Final diagnosis
- Long term management plan including follow up instructions
- Name and contact of physician

➔ See annex 2 (page 197) for a copy of the feedback form.

1.10 CONFLICT OF INTEREST
Stakeholders (writers, reviewers and editors) declare that they have no personal interests or benefits in the development of these CVD guidelines.
REFERENCES:


LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABI</td>
<td>Ankle Brachial Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFR</td>
<td>Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASCVD</td>
<td>Atherosclerotic Cardiovascular Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI</td>
<td>Body Mass Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BP</td>
<td>Blood Pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAD</td>
<td>Coronary Artery Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVD</td>
<td>Cardiovascular Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM</td>
<td>Diabetes Mellitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBS</td>
<td>Fasting Blood Sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDL</td>
<td>High-Density Lipoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>Low-Density Lipoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAD</td>
<td>Peripheral Artery Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TG</td>
<td>Triglycerides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLDL</td>
<td>Very Low-Density Lipoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHO/ISH</td>
<td>World Health Organization/International Society of Hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHR</td>
<td>Waist Hip Ratio</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.1 INTRODUCTION

Risk factors are conditions that, when present, put people at greater likelihood of developing atherosclerotic cardiovascular diseases (ASCVD). The term ASCVD comprises: coronary artery disease, peripheral artery disease, cerebral and carotid artery disease. Some of the risk factors such as hypertension can cause CVD directly without going through atherosclerosis. For instance, hypertension can cause heart failure from hypertensive heart disease, aortic dissection and hemorrhagic stroke.

Several CVD risk factors have been identified. Early detection and management of these CVD risk factors will help prevent and/or slow the progression of CVDs. Many of these CVD risk factors are controllable (modifiable risk factors) whereas a few cannot be controlled/modified and are not dependent on lifestyle (non-modifiable risk factors).

Although much of the burden of CVDs can be explained by the well-established risk factors, several emerging risk factors have been identified. The emerging risk factors for CVD become significant when added to the traditional risk factors (accelerate the development of CVDs).

Table 3: Traditional and emerging cardiovascular risk factors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Traditional cardiovascular risk factors</th>
<th>Non-modifiable CVD risk factors</th>
<th>Emerging cardiovascular risk factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>Age (≥45 yrs in men; ≥55 yrs in women)</td>
<td>Arterial wall stiffness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes</td>
<td>Family history of premature coronary artery disease: males, age &lt;55 yrs; females, age &lt;65 yrs</td>
<td>Coronary artery calcification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyslipidemia (high LDL, low HDL, high triglycerides)</td>
<td>Male sex</td>
<td>Lipoprotein A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity (BMI &gt;30)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperfibrinogenemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive alcohol consumption</td>
<td></td>
<td>Raised inflammatory markers e.g. IL-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobacco smoking</td>
<td></td>
<td>C-reactive protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical inactivity</td>
<td></td>
<td>Chronic kidney disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstructive sleep apnea</td>
<td></td>
<td>Carotid intima media thickness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperhomocysteinaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Microalbuminuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperuricemia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2 RISK ASSESSMENT

2.2.1 TOTAL RISK ASSESSMENT

Counting the number of risk factors present in an individual does not give accurate estimate of atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (ASCVD) risk. It is more beneficial if the ASCVD risk is expressed as 10-year or 30-year (lifetime) risk or cardiovascular age. Several risk assessment models are available for estimating the risk of initial ASCVD events in asymptomatic individuals. However, no single risk assessment model will be best suited for all patients. These guidelines adopt the World Health Organization (WHO) risk assessment tool.
2.2.2 WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION/INTERNATIONAL SOCIETY OF HYPERTENSION (WHO/ISH) RISK PREDICTION CHART

Chart AFR D (Africa zone D) is appropriate for Ghana. AFR D covers the West African sub-region, which Ghana falls under. Before using the chart, make sure the following information is available: gender, age, presence or absence of diabetes, smoking status, systolic blood pressure (BP) and total blood cholesterol. For health facilities, which cannot check blood cholesterol, use the appropriate chart that does not have total cholesterol.

i. HOW TO USE THE WHO/ISH PREDICTION CHART

Step 1: Select the appropriate chart depending on the presence or absence of diabetes.
Step 2: Select male or female tables.
Step 3: Select smoker or non-smoker boxes.
Step 4: Select age group box (e.g. if age is 50-59 years select 50, if 60-69 years select 60 etc.).
Step 5: Within this box or cell, find the nearest cell where the individuals’ systolic blood pressure (mmHg) and total blood cholesterol level (mmol/l) cross or intercept. The colour of this cell determines the 10-year ASCVD risk of developing a stroke or heart attack which is expressed in percentages (from <10% to >40%).

ii. RECOMMENDED ACTION PER RISK CATEGORY

Table 4: Recommended action per risk category

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk score</th>
<th>Recommended action</th>
<th>Evidence rating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low 10-year risk (&lt;10%)</td>
<td>Reassure and encourage to maintain a healthy lifestyle (e.g. regular exercise, healthy diet etc. see below)</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate 10-year risk</td>
<td>Engage patient in discussions on lifestyle changes and treat for hypertension, diabetes and high blood cholesterol when indicated</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10-30%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High 10-year risk (&gt;30%)</td>
<td>Recommend lifestyle changes and treat for hypertension, diabetes and high blood cholesterol when indicated. check for the presence of CVDs and treat appropriately</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

iii. PRACTICAL POINTS

- Individuals with already established atherosclerotic CVD do not require the use of risk assessment tools; they are already high risk and managed as such
- First degree relatives (parents and siblings) of individuals with high CVD risk should be advised to undergo CVD risk assessment
- The WHO/ISH risk score may underestimate the total CVD risk in certain individuals. Therefore, treatment decisions can be made in certain cases: e.g. persistently raised BP (>160/100mmHg), or blood cholesterol (>8mmol/l), or diabetes with renal disease; the chart (figure 2) shows aggregated risk scores but for a very high level of one risk, treatment can be initiated to correct or reduce this individual risk
Figure 2: WHO/ISH CVD risk chart for Africa zone D
(Adapted from WHO risk prediction chart for Africa zone D)
2.2.3 LIFESTYLE MODIFICATION FOR THE PREVENTION AND MANAGEMENT OF CVDs

Lifestyle modification involves altering long term habits typically of eating or physical activity and maintaining the new behaviour. This is important in the prevention and management of CVDs.

It requires long term commitment on the part of the health worker and patient. The specific lifestyle recommendation will depend on existing co-morbidities (other relevant medical conditions).

Lifestyle modification includes:

i. BEHAVIOURAL CHANGES
   - Lifestyle modifications require a change in mindset; making small changes at a time
   - Successful initiation and maintenance of lifestyle changes require commitment to the process of change
   - The family and caregivers can influence the patients’ lifestyle choices and should be involved in the care process
   - Lifestyle recommendations must be tailored to the individual’s socioeconomic status and the patient’s own assessment of his self-competencies
   - Patients must be guided to set realistic goals

ii. STRESS MANAGEMENT
   - Elevated levels of stress particularly chronic stress are associated with CVDs\(^6\)–\(^8\)
   - Behavioural interventions for dealing with stress include having a positive outlook, healthy coping and relaxation techniques\(^9\),\(^10\)
   - Patients needing professional help must be referred to the clinical psychologist

iii. EATING PATTERNS
   - Food composition must be individualized as “one size does not fit all” (Evidence Rating A)\(^11\),\(^12\)
   - In making lifestyle recommendations, the focus is not on individual nutrients (like carbohydrates, proteins, etc) but rather on meal patterns because meals are eaten in patterns rather than specific components (Evidence rating C)
   - The meals recommended must take into consideration the cultural preferences of the patient
   - Creating a caloric deficit is to be added for managing patients with obesity; the average adult requires about 25 to 30 kcal/kg body weight per day to maintain the current body weight; creating a deficit of about 500 kcal/day will result in gradual weight loss
   - The energy requirement is activity dependent i.e. a sedentary job may require less energy than field workers or those in the construction industry
   - Obesity in children is on the increase, reaching epidemic proportions; eating patterns are a learned behaviour; it is important that children are introduced to healthy options at an early age
   - Where available, a diet therapist should be involved

Table 5: General nutritional recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>Evidence rating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consume whole grains with high fiber content to avoid glucose surges (refined carbohydrates are absorbed faster) e.g. unpolished rice, wheat, maize(^13)</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consume foods high in polyunsaturated fat e.g. salmon, herrings, tuna, mackerel, etc. and monounsaturated fat e.g. groundnuts, cashew nuts, olive oil, avocado, pear(^14),(^18),(^19)</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avoid trans-fat e.g margarine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit intake of saturated fats from both plant and animal sources e.g butter(^15)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduce total daily salt intake (dietary salt should not exceed 1 teaspoon full per day)(^16)</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily intake of fruits and vegetables (consume ≥5 portions of fresh fruit and vegetables/day)(^17)</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
iv. PHYSICAL ACTIVITY
Specific recommendations must be individualized based on the presence of co-morbidities (other relevant medical conditions). Supervised physical activity is more encouraged than unsupervised activity.

Table 6: Recommendations for physical activity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>Type of activity</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Intensity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Outdoor (e.g. walking, cycling)</td>
<td>Most days of the week for outdoor activities</td>
<td>At least 150 minutes a week but not less than 10 minutes a stretch; depends on level of intensity and tolerance</td>
<td>High: 80% of maximum heart rate e.g. running, skipping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indoor (strength training, swimming, aerobics, etc.)</td>
<td>2-3 times weekly for indoor activities</td>
<td></td>
<td>Moderate: 60% of maximum heart rate e.g. brisk walking, household cleaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use the staircase instead of lift where possible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Low-intensity: 40% of maximum heart rate e.g. strolling on level ground</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

v. SEDENTARY TIME
Prolonged sedentary time adversely affects cardiovascular risk\textsuperscript{20–22} (Evidence Rating A). Patients must therefore consciously track the amount of time they spend being sedentary.

Table 7: Sedentary time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>Evidence rating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Patients are encouraged to break periods of prolonged sitting with brief periods of activity; 3–5 minutes for every hour of sitting</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

vi. USE OF SUBSTANCES

Table 8: Substance use and abuse

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>Evidence rating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Avoid or stop smoking; patients must be assisted to quit using tobacco and shisha</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduce alcohol consumption (limit alcohol to ≤2 units per day men and ≤1 unit per day women)</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A unit of alcohol is equivalent to:
- 1 standard glass of beer (375 ml)
- 1 small glass of wine (100 ml)
- 1 tot of spirit (30 ml)
2.2.4 RISK MANAGEMENT THROUGH PRIMARY AND SECONDARY PREVENTION

The goal of the preventive approach is to target the modifiable risk factors by implementing measures to control them to levels where they are less likely to pose a danger for the development of ASCVD. ASCVD risk assessment has become the norm in shared-decision making with patients\textsuperscript{23}. Non-modifiable risk factors should be documented and factored into clinical decisions. Risk estimation is useful in assessing a patient’s risk of developing ASCVD. (Refer to figure 2)

Table 9: Target levels for important cardiovascular risk factors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modifiable risk factor</th>
<th>Target</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>&lt;140/90 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes</td>
<td>HbA1c &lt;7% or FBS &lt;6 mmol/l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>Very high-risk: &lt;1.8 mmol/l, or a reduction of at least 50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-risk: &lt;2.6 mmol/l, or a reduction of at least 50%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low to moderate risk: &lt;3.0 mmol/l</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDL</td>
<td>&gt;1.0 mmol/l in men and &gt;1.2 mmol/l in women indicate lower risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triglycerides</td>
<td>&lt;1.7 mmol/l indicates lower risk and higher levels indicate a need to look for other risk factors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity</td>
<td>BMI 20–25 kg/m(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Waist circumference &lt;94 cm (men) or &lt;80 cm (women)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical inactivity (PA)</td>
<td>At least 150 minutes a week of moderate aerobic physical activity and not less than 10 minutes a stretch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diet</td>
<td>Low in saturated fat with a focus on wholegrain products, vegetables, fruit and fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking</td>
<td>No exposure to tobacco in any form</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRIMARY PREVENTION

MANAGEMENT OF ELEVATED LIPID LEVELS

High blood cholesterol levels increase the risk of clinical ASCVD\textsuperscript{25}. Among the lipoprotein carriers of serum cholesterol, low-density lipoprotein (LDL) is the primary atherogenic (bad) cholesterol. Thus, it is important to target low levels of LDL. It must be noted that there are other forms of cholesterol abnormalities, which can also lead to ASCVD such as low levels of high-density lipoprotein (HDL) and high levels of triglycerides (TG) or very low-density lipoprotein (VLDL). The use of lifestyle (non-pharmacological) and pharmacological interventions/treatment are recommended to reduce blood levels of cholesterol\textsuperscript{23, 26–28}.

Statins are the first line pharmacological agents used for reducing LDL cholesterol and are categorised by their potency (table 10) in reducing LDL levels usually in 8 to 12 weeks of taking the medications daily. Other medications such as Ezetimibe\textsuperscript{*}, Niacin\textsuperscript{*} and Evolocumab\textsuperscript{*} can be added to statins to enhance reduction of LDL to target levels.
In patients with established ASCVD, the recommendation is that the “lower the better” when it comes to cholesterol management. The goals of treatment are LDL-C below 1.8 mmol/l or >50% LDL-C reduction, when target level cannot be reached.

Control of high blood pressure is a very important measure of secondary prevention (see chapter 5 on management of hypertension).

### 2.2.5 MANAGEMENT OF DYSLIPIDAEMIAS BY LEVEL OF CARE

#### i. HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR

**MANAGEMENT (EVIDENCE LEVEL A)**

Educate patients about:
- Risk factors for CVDs
- Lifestyle modification – review lifestyle habits with regards to diet, physical activity, weight/BMI, tobacco use

---

**Table 10: Categories of statin based on potency (Adapted from Guideline on the Management of Blood Cholesterol)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intensity</th>
<th>LDL-C lowering effect (goal)</th>
<th>Statins (oral)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High intensity</td>
<td>≥50%</td>
<td>Atorvastatin 40–80mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Rosuvastatin 20–40mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate intensity</td>
<td>30%–49%</td>
<td>Atorvastatin 10–20mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Rosuvastatin 5–10mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Simvastatin 20–40mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low intensity</td>
<td>&lt;30%</td>
<td>Simvastatin 10mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 11: Risk category and pharmacological intervention**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adult patient risk category</th>
<th>Recommendation/goals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 20 to 39 years old with family history of premature ASCVD | ▪ Estimate lifetime risk and manage  
▪ If LDL >4.1 mmol/l, consider statin therapy |
| 40 to 75 years without diabetes with LDL between 1.8 and 4.9 mmol/l (3 categories) |  
1. High risk  
Start statin therapy with goal to reduce LDL by >50%  
2. Intermediate risk  
Start statin with goal to reduce LDL by 30%–49%  
3. Low risk  
Educate patient and encourage lifestyle changes |
| Adults with LDL above 4.9 mmol/l | Irrespective of the risk score, start high intensity statin therapy |
| Diabetes mellitus and aged 40 to 75 years (2 categories) |  
1. High risk  
High intensity statin otherwise use moderate intensity statin  
2. Intermediate risk  
Start moderate intensity statins |
| Age >75 years | Individualized clinical assessment, risk discussion and encourage shared-decision making |
Emphasise the importance of a healthy lifestyle:
- Diet modification: a low calorie, low saturated fat (animal fat), high polyunsaturated fat diet is recommended under the supervision of a dietician
- Weight reduction for overweight and obese patients
- Reduction of alcohol consumption in patients who drink excessively
- Regular physical activity or exercise tailored to the individual patient

→ Emphasise the importance of a normal blood pressure and regular blood pressure measurement (Refer to chapter 5 in case BP is too high).

ii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR

iiia. INVESTIGATION
- Fasting blood lipid profile
- Thyroid function test (if lipid levels very high)
- Plasma protein (if lipid levels very high, to exclude nephrotic syndrome)
- Urine protein (if lipid levels very high, to exclude nephrotic syndrome)
- Fasting glucose level
- Blood pressure measurement

iiib. MANAGEMENT

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MANAGEMENT (EVIDENCE LEVEL A)
Educate patients about:
- Risk factors for CVDs
- Lifestyle modification – review lifestyle habits with regards to diet, physical activity, weight/BMI, tobacco use
- Potential ASCVD risk reduction from lipid-lowering therapy
- The potential adverse effects of lipid-lowering therapy

Emphasise the importance of a healthy lifestyle:
- Diet modification: a low calorie, low saturated fat (animal fat), high polyunsaturated fat diet is recommended under the supervision of a dietician
- Weight reduction in overweight and obese patients
- Reduction of alcohol consumption in patients who drink excessively
- Regular physical activity of exercise tailored to the individual patient

PHARMACOLOGIC MANAGEMENT
Low CVD risk
- Simvastatin, oral 10-20mg at night

Moderate CVD risk – diabetes and CVD risk equivalents
- Atorvastatin, oral 10-20mg daily
  or
- Rosuvastatin, oral 5-10mg daily
  or
- Simvastatin, oral 20-40mg at night
High CVD risk
- Atorvastatin, oral 40-80mg daily
- Rosuvastatin, oral 20-40mg daily

→ NOTE: In all cases, assess adherence and percentage LDL reduction and lifestyle changes with repeated lipid measurement 4 to 12 weeks after statin initiation or dose adjustment, repeated every 3 to 12 months as needed1.

Referral criteria:
- All patients who remain outside the target values beyond 6 months should be referred to a health facility with a specialist.
- For control of an elevated BP please refer to chapter 5.1 of these guidelines.
- For the management of diabetes please refer appropriate diabetes guidelines.

iii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST OR TERTIARY HOSPITAL

iiia. INVESTIGATION
- Fasting blood lipid profile
- Thyroid function test (if lipid levels very high)
- Plasma protein (if lipid levels very high, to exclude nephrotic syndrome)
- Urine protein (if lipid levels very high, to exclude nephrotic syndrome)
- Fasting blood sugar
- Blood pressure measurement

iiib. MANAGEMENT (EVIDENCE LEVEL A/B)

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MANAGEMENT (EVIDENCE LEVEL A)
Educate patients about:
- Risk factors for CVDs
- Lifestyle modification: review lifestyle habits with regards to diet, physical activity, weight/BMI, tobacco use
- Potential ASCVD risk reduction from lipid-lowering therapy
- The potential adverse effects of lipid-lowering therapy

Emphasise the importance of a healthy lifestyle:
- Diet modification: a low calorie, low saturated fat (animal fat), high polyunsaturated fat diet is recommended under the supervision of a dietician
- Weight reduction in overweight and obese patients
- Reduction of alcohol consumption in patients who drink excessively
- Regular physical activity of exercise tailored to the individual patient

PHARMACOLOGIC MANAGEMENT
Low CVD risk
- Simvastatin, oral 10-20mg at night
Moderate CVD risk – diabetes and CVD risk equivalents
- Atorvastatin, oral 10-20mg daily
  or
- Rosuvastatin, oral 5-10mg daily
  or
- Simvastatin, oral 20-40mg at night

High CVD risk
- Atorvastatin, oral 40-80mg daily
  or
- Rosuvastatin, oral 20-40mg daily

→ NOTE: In all cases, assess adherence and percentage LDL reduction and lifestyle changes with repeated lipid measurement 4 to 12 weeks after statin initiation or dose adjustment, repeated every 3 to 12 months as needed1.

In very high-risk ASCVD patients
- Add Ezetimibe* to the patient’s maximally tolerated statin therapy if the LDL-C level remains ≥ 1.8 mmol/l
- If the LDL-C level on maximally tolerated statin and Ezetimibe* remains ≥ 1.8 mmol/l, a PCSK9 inhibitor can be added

→ NOTE: Very high-risk patients include patients with a history of multiple major ASCVD events or one major ASCVD event and multiple high-risk conditions.

In patients with severe hypercholesterolaemia (LDL-C level ≥ 4.9 mmol/l) (Evidence level B)
- Add Ezetimibe* if the LDL-C level remains ≥ 2.6 mmol
- Add a PCSK9 inhibitor if the LDL-C level on statin and Ezetimibe* remains >2.6mmol/l and the patient has multiple factors that increase subsequent risk of ASCVD events

→ For management of hypertension please refer to chapter 5.1 of these guidelines.
→ For the management of diabetes please refer to the appropriate guideline.
REFERENCES:


# SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS OF CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASES

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Aortic Regurgitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AV</td>
<td>Arterio-venous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COPD</td>
<td>Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIC</td>
<td>Disseminated Intravascular Coagulopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JVP</td>
<td>Jugular Venous Pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAO</td>
<td>Monoamine Oxidase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDA</td>
<td>Patent Ductus Arteriosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PND</td>
<td>Paroxysmal Nocturnal Dyspnoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUD</td>
<td>Peptic Ulcer Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RA</td>
<td>Right Atrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RVF</td>
<td>Right Ventricular Failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAAG</td>
<td>Serum-Ascites Albumin Gradient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLE</td>
<td>Systemic Lupus Erythematosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TB</td>
<td>Tuberculosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.1 SYMPTOMS OF CVDs

3.1.1 DYSPNOEA

- Dyspnoea is a subjective experience of breathing discomfort; also referred to as breathlessness.
- Orthopnoea – dyspnoea on lying flat.
- Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea – dyspnoea that usually occurs during sleep; wakes patient up and may be relieved by standing or sitting.
- Dyspnoea of sudden onset should be treated as a medical emergency.

CAUSES

Table 12: Causes of dyspnoea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causes of dyspnoea</th>
<th>Cardiovascular</th>
<th>Respiratory</th>
<th>Others</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heart failure</td>
<td></td>
<td>Bronchial obstruction</td>
<td>Massive ascites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constrictive pericarditis</td>
<td></td>
<td>Bronchospasm/asthma</td>
<td>Anaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrhythmias</td>
<td></td>
<td>Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)</td>
<td>Hyperviscosity syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pericardial effusion</td>
<td></td>
<td>Infection e.g. pneumonia, pulmonary tuberculosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary emboli</td>
<td></td>
<td>Interstitial fibrosis</td>
<td>Muscular atrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tumour infiltration into lungs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pleural effusion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 13: Differentiating features of cardiac vs. respiratory dyspnoea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Differentiating features of cardiac vs. respiratory dyspnoea</th>
<th>Cardiac</th>
<th>Respiratory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cough comes after the onset of dyspnoea</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cough prominent and precedes dyspnoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthopnoea</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sputum production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea (PND) common</td>
<td></td>
<td>Wheezing (more common)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oedema</td>
<td></td>
<td>No PND; patient may have midnight awakening with cough and sputum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raised jugular venous pressure (JVP)</td>
<td></td>
<td>No orthopnoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced urine output</td>
<td></td>
<td>Normal urine output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improves with diuretics</td>
<td></td>
<td>No change with diuretics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.2 CHEST PAIN

Chest pain is discomfort or pain, pressure or tightness that is felt anywhere along the front of the body between the neck and upper abdomen.

Pain in the chest is a symptom that should not be ignored and can result from any of the following causes (see table 14). Table 15 shows the clinical classification of angina.
CAUSES

Table 14: Causes of chest pain

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causes</th>
<th>Non-cardiac</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac</td>
<td>Non-cardiac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myocardial infarction (heart attack)</td>
<td>Pulmonary origin (pneumonia, pulmonary embolism, pleuritis, pneumothorax, asthma, COPD, acute bronchitis, lung abscess)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unstable angina</td>
<td>Musculoskeletal (costochondritis, trauma, muscle pain, referred pain from spine, cancer induced pain)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stable angina (chest pain on exertion)</td>
<td>Mediastinal (aortic dissection, mediastinitis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prinzmetal angina (variant angina)</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal (oesophagitis, gastritis, peptic ulcer disease (PUD), oesophageal spasm, cholecystitis, pancreatitis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pericarditis</td>
<td>Others (herpes zoster, post herpetic neuralgia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aortic valve stenosis</td>
<td>Psychogenic (panic attacks, psychiatric disorders, anxious state)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitral valve prolapse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pericardial effusion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital cardiac anomalies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 15: Clinical classification of angina

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical classification of angina</th>
<th>Periodion of the following characteristics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Typical angina (definite)</td>
<td>Meets all three of the following characteristics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Substernal chest discomfort of characteristic quality and duration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Provoked by exertion or emotional stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Relieved by rest and/or nitrates within minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atypical angina (probable)</td>
<td>Meets any two of the above characteristics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-anginal chest pain</td>
<td>Meets one or none of the above characteristics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.3 OEDEMA
This is due to an increase in interstitial fluid volume.
It typically begins in dependent body parts (legs, sacrum). Anasarca is defined as gross, generalised swelling.

CAUSES

Table 16: Causes of body swelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causes of body swelling</th>
<th>Non-cardiac</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac</td>
<td>Non-cardiac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart failure</td>
<td>Non steroidal anti inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constrictive pericarditis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venous insufficiency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep vein thrombosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nephrotic syndrome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal failure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary hypertension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver cirrhosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver failure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium channel blockers, e.g. nifedipine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoproteinemic states</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphoedema</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malnutrition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.1.4 **HAEMOPTYSIS**

- Haemoptysis, or the coughing up of blood, can range from blood-streaking of sputum, to the presence of frank blood.
- Haemoptysis has a variety of causes, but the cause can be determined in most patients. It is important to identify the cause and location of the bleeding in order to guide treatment.

**CAUSES**
The usual causes of haemoptysis to look out for are listed in table 17:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causes of haemoptysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cardiovascular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Left ventricular failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Mitral stenosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- AV malformation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Pulmonary embolism/infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Bronchiectasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Cystic fibrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Bullous emphysema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hematologic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Disseminate intravascular coagulopathy (DIC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Bleeding disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Thrombocytopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Pulmonary TB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Lung abscess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Pneumonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Vasculitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Goodpasture syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Systemic Lupus Erythematodus (SLE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neoplastic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Lung cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Metastatic cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drugs/toxins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Anticoagulants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Aspirin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Thrombolytics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traumatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Chest injuries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iatrogenic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Bronchoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Transtracheal aspiration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.5 **SYNCOPE**

It is a temporary loss of consciousness usually related to insufficient blood flow to the brain or cerebral hypoperfusion characterised by rapid onset, short duration, and spontaneous complete recovery.

It does not only carry the potential of harm to the patient but frequently carries a poorer prognosis when it is due to an underlying heart disease.

This presentation should be distinguished from causes of transient loss of consciousness that are not due to global hypoperfusion such as seizure or hypoglycaemia and from presentations that may resemble transient loss of consciousness such as falls.

Syncope should be differentiated from dizziness, presyncope, near-fainting and vertigo.

### i. CAUSES

**Table 18: Causes of syncope**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Non-cardiac</th>
<th>Cardiac</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Reflex/neurogenic: Vasovagal 20–33% of all cases of syncope</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Carotid sinus hypersensitivity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Situational (e.g. micturition, defecation, cough, swallowing)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Orthostatic hypotension (volume depletion, medicine, autonomic dysfunction)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Verteobasilar disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Arrhythmias: tachyarrhythmias and bradyarrhythmias</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Myocardial infarction or heart attack</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Structural: aortic stenosis, hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Pulmonary embolism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Aortic dissection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Cardiac tamponade</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Atrial myxoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ii. FEATURES DISTINGUISHING SYNCOPE FROM SEIZURES

Table 19: Symptoms of syncope and seizure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Favours syncope</th>
<th>Favours seizure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Presyncope or preceded by dizziness</td>
<td>- Waking with tongue bite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Loss of consciousness after prolonged standing or sitting</td>
<td>- Postictal confusion or sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Sweating before the fall</td>
<td>- Prodromal déjà vu or jamais vu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Short duration with spontaneous recovery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.6 PALPITATIONS
Palpitations are defined as an unpleasant awareness of the forceful, rapid, or irregular beating of the heart. Below are some causes of palpitations (Table 20).

Table 20: Causes of palpitations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardiac</th>
<th>Non-cardiac</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Atrial fibrillation/flutter</td>
<td>- Anaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Atrial myxoma</td>
<td>- Alcohol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Atrial premature contractions</td>
<td>- Anxiety/stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Atrioventricular re-entry</td>
<td>- Coffeine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Cardiomyopathy</td>
<td>- Cocaine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Multifocal atrial tachycardia</td>
<td>- Exercise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Sick sinus syndrome</td>
<td>- Fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Supraventricular tachycardia</td>
<td>- Hypoglycemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Valvular heart disease</td>
<td>- Nicotine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Ventricular premature contractions</td>
<td>- Phaeochromocytoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Ventricular tachycardia</td>
<td>- Pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Hyperthyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Withdrawal of medications, e.g. Beta-blockers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2 SIGNS OF CVDs

3.2.1 GENERAL APPEARANCE
Although cardiac patients may appear healthy and comfortable at rest, patients with underlying CVD may have any or some of the following:

Table 21: General signs of CVD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signs</th>
<th>Some associated conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anxiety and restlessness</td>
<td>MI, hyperthyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diaphoresis/sweating</td>
<td>Tachyarrhythmias, MI, hyperthyroidism, cardiac tamponade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold clammy extremities and pallor</td>
<td>Low cardiac output states e.g. heart failure (HF), anaemia,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>shock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac cachexia</td>
<td>Severe chronic heart failure and other long-standing low cardiac output states.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.2 DYSPNOEA AT REST (TACHYPNOEA)
This is increased respiratory rate or laboured breathing. It may be due to a heart disease or a respiratory disease (refer to Table 12).
The patient may be dyspnoeic on lying flat, and comfortable when he/she sits up.
3.2.3 OEDEMA
- May be present and pitting in nature and extent quantified
- Severe right heart failure may also be present with ascites and scrotal/vulvar oedema
Anasarca is defined as gross, generalized oedema.

3.2.4 ABNORMAL PULSE
Abnormal pulse may be a sign of cardiac disease.
- It may be rapid (>120bpm) or slow (<40bpm)
- It may be weak or thread
- It may be irregular
- It may be strong and bounding
Jugular venous pulse provides insight into the right heart pressure and function.

Table 22: Pulse and associated condition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pulse</th>
<th>Associated condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diminished peripheral pulse</td>
<td>Peripheral vascular disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asymmetric pulse</td>
<td>Coarctation of aorta/aortic dissection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Subclavian steel syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delayed upstroke in the carotid pulse</td>
<td>Aortic stenosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(anacrotic pulse)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biphasic pulse/pulsus bisferiens</td>
<td>Aortic stenosis and aortic regurgitation, as well as hypertrophic cardiomyopathy causing subaortic stenosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulsus paradoxoxus</td>
<td>Asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), pericardial tamponade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulsus alternans</td>
<td>Left ventricular failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collapsing pulse</td>
<td>Aortic regurgitation (AR), hyperdynamic circulation, patent ductus arteriosus (PDA), peripheral artero-venous fistula, arteriosclerotic aorta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(water-hammer pulse/Corrigan's pulse)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raised jugular venous pressure</td>
<td>Tricuspidal stenosis/regurgitation, hyperdynamic circulation, pericardial effusion, constrictive pericarditis, fluid overload, superior vena cava obstruction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pulse Associated condition
Diminished peripheral pulse Peripheral vascular disease
Asymmetric pulse Coarctation of aorta/aortic dissection Subclavian steel syndrome
Delayed upstroke in the carotid pulse (anacrotic pulse) Aortic stenosis
Biphasic pulse/pulsus bisferiens Aortic stenosis and aortic regurgitation, as well as hypertrophic cardiomyopathy causing subaortic stenosis
Pulsus paradoxoxus Asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), pericardial tamponade
Pulsus alternans Left ventricular failure
Collapsing pulse Aortic regurgitation (AR), hyperdynamic circulation, patent ductus arteriosus (PDA), peripheral artero-venous fistula, arteriosclerotic aorta
(Right-ward pulse/Corrigan's pulse) Raised jugular venous pressure Tricuspidal stenosis/regurgitation, hyperdynamic circulation, pericardial effusion, constrictive pericarditis, fluid overload, superior vena cava obstruction

3.2.5 ABNORMAL BLOOD PRESSURE
Abnormal blood pressure may be low or high.

⇒ For blood pressure classification refer to chapter 5.1 on hypertension.
3.2.6 CYANOSIS

- Cyanosis is defined as the bluish discoloration of the skin and mucous membranes due to hypoxia. It may be central or peripheral

- Central due to arterial desaturation or hypoxia from pulmonary disease, left heart failure, or right-to-left intracardiac or intrapulmonary shunting; the latter will not be improved by increasing the inspired oxygen concentration

- Peripheral cyanosis reflects impaired tissue delivery of adequately oxygenated blood e.g. in low-output states, polycythaemia or peripheral vasoconstriction

3.2.7 CLUBBING

- Occurs in chronic cyanotic states; it may be due to congenital heart diseases; other causes include non-cardiac conditions such as respiratory diseases and gastrointestinal diseases

- Differential clubbing of the toes but not the fingers suggest pulmonary hypertension related to a patent ductus arteriosus and a right to left shunt through the ductus

3.2.8 APEX BEAT

It is the most inferior, most lateral point on the precordium (anterior area of the chest covering the heart) at which the cardiac impulse can be felt. A displaced apex beat usually implies enlargement of the heart, called cardiomegaly.

3.2.9 PARASTERNAL HEAVES (LIFT) AND THRILLS

A parasternal heave (or lift) is a precordial impulse that may be felt (palpated) in patients with cardiac or respiratory disease. It usually suggests the presence of dilatation, as in right ventricular dilatation of severe pulmonary hypertension. A thrill is a vibratory sensation on the hand, frequently in the auscultatory areas of the valves. A thrill therefore is a palpable murmur.

3.2.10 HEART SOUNDS

Table 23: Heart sounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Normal heart sounds</th>
<th>S1</th>
<th>S2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Event</td>
<td>Closure of atrioventricular valves</td>
<td>Closure of semilunar valves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pitch</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>higher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>longer</td>
<td>shorter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Point of maximum intensity</td>
<td>Apex/mitral area</td>
<td>Base of heart</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathological heart sounds</th>
<th>S3</th>
<th>S4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Event</td>
<td>Caused by turbulent flow into ventricles (rapid ventricular filling)</td>
<td>Atrial contraction against a stiff (non-compliant) ventricle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pitch</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Significance</td>
<td>Ventricular dilation May be heard in children and young adults (&lt;40 years), but usually pathological in old age which may signify heart failure</td>
<td>Atrial dilatation in conditions like hypertensive heart disease and aortic stenosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.2.11 CARDIAC MURMURS
Cardiac or valvular dysfunction may lead to turbulent or abnormal flow called murmurs which are heard using the stethoscope. Table 24 shows some cardiac diseases that give rise to murmurs and where they can best be heard.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Valve</th>
<th>Side best auscultated</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mitral</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>5th intercostal space, midclavicular line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aortic</td>
<td>Right</td>
<td>2nd intercostal, right sternal border</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tricuspid</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>4th intercostal space, left sternal border</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>2nd intercostal space, left sternal border</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardiac lesion</th>
<th>Murmur</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mitral incompetence</td>
<td>Pansystolic murmur</td>
<td>Apex radiating to the axilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitral stenosis</td>
<td>Mid-late diastolic rumbling murmur</td>
<td>Apex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aortic incompetence</td>
<td>Early diastolic murmur</td>
<td>Left sternal edge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aortic stenosis</td>
<td>Ejection systolic</td>
<td>Aortic area radiating to the neck/carotid artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tricuspid incompetence</td>
<td>Pansystolic murmur</td>
<td>Left sternal edge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tricuspid stenosis</td>
<td>Mid-late diastolic murmur</td>
<td>Left sternal edge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary incompetence</td>
<td>Early diastolic murmur</td>
<td>Left sternal edge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary stenosis</td>
<td>Ejection systolic murmur</td>
<td>Left sternal edge</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.12 HEPATOMEGALY AND ASCITES
These signs could point to an underlying cardiac disease such as:
- Congestive heart failure
- Right-sided heart failure
- Constrictive pericarditis
- Endomyocardial fibrosis

REFERENCES
## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACS</th>
<th>Acute coronary syndrome</th>
<th>ICD</th>
<th>Implantable cardioverter defibrillator</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACLS</td>
<td>Advanced Cardiac Life Support</td>
<td>MI</td>
<td>Myocardial infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLS</td>
<td>Basic Life Support</td>
<td>SCD</td>
<td>Sudden cardiac death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAD</td>
<td>Coronary artery disease</td>
<td>VT</td>
<td>Ventricular tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPR</td>
<td>Cardiopulmonary resuscitation</td>
<td>VF</td>
<td>Ventricular fibrillation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.1 INTRODUCTION
Sudden cardiac death (SCD) from cardiac arrest is the largest cause of natural death worldwide and is responsible for half of all heart disease deaths. Although resuscitation rates are improving throughout the world, the majority of individuals who suffer a sudden cardiac arrest will not survive. Such rapid deaths are often due to lethal ventricular arrhythmias in the setting of underlying coronary artery disease. In Africa, the hypertensive heart disease, cardiomyopathies and rheumatic heart disease account for most cardiac arrest.

i. DEFINITION
Cardiac arrest is the abrupt loss of heart function from the failure of the heart to pump effectively. Sudden cardiac arrest occurs when the heart develops an abnormal rhythm and can't pump blood. Cardiac arrest is often fatal if appropriate steps are not taken immediately.

ii. EPIDEMIOLOGY
Cardiac arrest is a major international public health problem accounting for an estimated 15-20% of all deaths. Cardiac arrest resulting in sudden death is most common in adults with acquired structural heart disease, but it also rarely occurs in younger individuals with inherited disorders. Coronary artery disease is known to be the most common underlying pathology.

iii. CLASSIFICATIONS
Cardiac arrest is often classified into „shockable“ versus „non–shockable“, as determined by the ECG rhythm to refer to whether the cardiac dysrhythmia is treatable using defibrillation. The two „shockable“ rhythms are ventricular fibrillation and pulseless ventricular tachycardia while asystole and pulseless electrical activity are „non–shockable“.

iv. AETIOLOGY
Coronary artery disease (CAD) is responsible for more than half of all SCDs resulting from cardiac arrest. Other structural heart disease (not related to CAD) account for 10% of all SCDs. Congestive heart failure, from whatever cause, increases the risk of SCD fivefold. Inherited arrhythmia syndromes in the setting of a structurally normal heart accounts for 5 to 10% of sudden cardiac arrests. These are usually caused by genetic mutations of ion channels (channelopathies) that lead to a predisposition to fatal arrhythmias. Examples of these inherited arrhythmia syndromes include Long QT syndrome, Brugada syndrome, Catecholaminergic polymorphic ventricular tachycardia, and Short QT syndrome.

In Africa, hypertensive heart disease, cardiomyopathies (peripartum cardiomyopathy, idiopathic dilated cardiomyopathy and endomyocardial fibrosis), pericardial disease and rheumatic valvular heart disease account for most cases of cardiac arrest.
The most common reversible causes of cardiac arrest are summarized below (5Ts and 5Hs):

5Hs:
- Hypovolaemia
- Hypoxia
- Hydrogen ions (acidosis)
- Hypo-/Hyperkalaemia
- Hypo-/Hyperglycaemia

5Ts:
- Tension pneumothorax
- Tamponade (cardiac)
- Toxins (including drugs)
- Thrombosis (pulmonary embolism)
- Thrombosis (ACS or MI)

**v. PHASES OF CARDIAC ARREST**

Cardiac arrest needs prompt intervention to prevent death because the window of opportunity for survival is very short. *Figure 5* shows the phases of cardiac arrest which is commonly caused by VF. Best chance of survival occurs at the electrical phase.
## 4.2 CLINICAL PRESENTATION OF CARDIAC ARREST

Cardiac arrest is not preceded by any warning symptoms in approximately half of victims. For those who do experience symptoms, they may include a new or worsening chest pain, fatigue, blackouts, dizziness, shortness of breath, weakness or vomiting.

Cardiac arrest will be accompanied by a lack of palpable pulses in the victim. As a result of loss of cerebral perfusion, the victim will rapidly lose consciousness and breathing will stop.

## 4.3 MANAGEMENT OF CARDIAC ARREST ACCORDING TO LEVEL OF CARE

Sudden cardiac arrest is an emergency. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) beginning with chest compressions should commence immediately after securing scene safety and calling for help. Defibrillation should be attempted as soon as it is available, and the rhythm is “shockable” (see AHA adult cardiac arrest algorithm: figure 6 and 7).

### i. HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR

- Refer to BLS healthcare provider adult cardiac arrest algorithm.

**LABORATORY INVESTIGATIONS**

- Random blood sugar
- Full blood count
- NB: Laboratory investigations should not delay patient referral after Return of Spontaneous Circulation (ROSC).

**PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT**

- Refer patient to a facility with a doctor as soon as patient develops a pulse (ROSC).
- Give oxygen if hypoxaemic (SPO2 < 90%)  

### ii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR

- Refer to adult cardiac arrest algorithms (BLS and ACLS see figure 6 and 7).

**LABORATORY AND OTHER INVESTIGATIONS**

- Full blood count
- Random blood sugar
- Blood urea and electrolytes
- Arterial blood gases (ABGs)
- Thyroid function
- Liver function
- Lipid profile
- Electrocardiogram
- Chest X-ray

**PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT**

Identify reversible causes (H’s and T’s as above) and treat accordingly after Return of Spontaneous Circulation (ROSC).

- Refer to facility with a physician specialist after ROSC.
iii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST

➔ Refer to adult cardiac arrest algorithms (BLS and ACLS see figure 6 and 7).

LABORATORY AND OTHER INVESTIGATIONS

- Full blood count
- Random blood sugar
- Blood urea and electrolytes
- Arterial blood gases (ABGs)
- Thyroid function
- Liver function
- Lipid profile
- Cardiac enzymes
- Electrocardiogram
- Chest X-ray
- Echocardiogram

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT AND DEVICE THERAPY

- Identify and treat reversible causes (H’s and T’s)
- Consider targeted temperature management
- Treat underlying structural and coronary heart disease
- Consider secondary prevention strategies in consultation with cardiologist (e.g. Beta-blockers and Implantable cardioverter defibrillator (ICDs))
Figure 6:
Basic Life Support (BLS) Algorithm (Adapted from American Heart Association 2, 2015)
Figure 7: Advance Cardiac Life Support (ACLS) Algorithm
(Adapted from American Heart Association 2, 2015)

Further explanations for figure 7 can be found in the table on the next page.
CPR quality

- Push hard (at least 2 inches (5 cm) and fast (100-120/min) and allow complete chest recoil
- Minimize interruptions in compressions
- Avoid excessive ventilation.
- Change compressor every 2 minutes, or sooner if fatigued
- If no advanced airway, 30:2 compression-ventilation ratio
- Quantitative waveform capnography
  - If PETCO2 <10 mmHg, attempt to improve CPR quality
- Intra-arterial pressure
  - If relaxation phase (diastolic) pressure <20 mmHg, attempt to improve CPR quality

Shock energy of defibrillation

- Biphasic: Manufacturer recommendation (eg, initial dose of 120-200 J); if unknown, use maximum available
- Second and subsequent doses should be equivalent, higher doses may be considered
- Monophasic: 360 J

Drug therapy

- Epinephrine iv/io dose: 1mg every 3–5 minutes
- Amiodarone iv/io: first dose: 300mg bolus; second dose: 150mg

Advanced airway

- Endotracheal intubation or supraglottic advanced airway
- Waveform capnography or capnometry to confirm and monitor ET tube placement
- Once advanced airway in place, give 1 breath every 6 seconds (10 breaths/min) with continuous chest compressions

Return of spontaneous circulation (ROSC)

- Pulse and blood pressure
- Abrupt sustained increase in PETCO2 (typically ≥40 mmHg)
- Spontaneous arterial pressure waves with intra-arterial monitoring

Reversible Causes

- Hypovolemia
- Hypoxia
- Hydrogen ion (acidosis)
- Hypo-/Hyperkalemia
- Hypothermia
- Tension pneumothorax
- Tamponade, cardiac
- Toxins
- Thrombosis, pulmonary
- Thrombosis, coronary

REFERENCES

5 DISEASES

5.1 HYPERTENSION

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABPM</td>
<td>Ambulatory Blood Pressure Monitoring</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACEI</td>
<td>Angiotensin Converting Enzyme Inhibitor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACS</td>
<td>Acute Coronary Syndrome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARB</td>
<td>Angiotensin Receptor Blocker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BB</td>
<td>Beta-Blocker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BP</td>
<td>Blood Pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCB</td>
<td>Calcium Channel Blocker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CKD</td>
<td>Chronic Kidney Disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVD</td>
<td>Cardiovascular Disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBP</td>
<td>Diastolic Blood Pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBS</td>
<td>Fasting Blood Sugar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HF</td>
<td>Heart Failure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPT</td>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVH</td>
<td>Left Ventricular Hypertrophy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI</td>
<td>Myocardial Infarction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSAIDS</td>
<td>Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drug</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPD</td>
<td>Outpatients' Department</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRN</td>
<td>As Needed/Required</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBP</td>
<td>Systolic Blood Pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSH</td>
<td>Thyroid Stimulating Hormone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.1.1 INTRODUCTION

i. DEFINITION

“Hypertension is defined as systolic blood pressure (SBP) values ≥140 mmHg and/or diastolic blood pressure (DBP) values ≥90 mmHg”. This definition applies to those, who are 18 years and above. For children and teenagers, BP centiles are preferred in diagnosing hypertension1,2.

- White coat office (clinic or OPD) hypertension is a form of hypertension in untreated patients where the BP is persistently elevated when measured in the clinic but normal when measured outside the clinic using ambulatory blood pressure monitoring (ABPM) and/or home blood pressure monitoring (HBPM)1,2.
- Masked ambulatory hypertension is a form of hypertension in untreated patients where the BP is normal in the office/clinic but elevated when measured outside the office using ABPM and/or HBPM1,2.

ii. EPIDEMIOLOGY

In Ghana, the number of new cases of hypertension reporting to clinics increased by more than tenfold between 1988 and 2007. Not many hypertensive patients are aware of their status especially in Africa. In 2006, 33-34% of people in a rural-urban setting in Ghana were aware of their hypertension status. Out of these, only 16.7-28% were on treatment and only 6.2% attained target (BP is controlled)5,6.

iii. CLASSIFICATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Systolic (mmHg)</th>
<th>and/or</th>
<th>Diastolic (mmHg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optimal</td>
<td>&lt;120</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>&lt;80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>120-129</td>
<td>and/or</td>
<td>80-84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High normal</td>
<td>130-139</td>
<td>and/or</td>
<td>85-89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 1 hypertension</td>
<td>140-159</td>
<td>and/or</td>
<td>90-99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 2 hypertension</td>
<td>160-179</td>
<td>and/or</td>
<td>100-109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 3 hypertension</td>
<td>≥180</td>
<td>and/or</td>
<td>100-109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isolated systolic hypertension</td>
<td>≥140</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>&lt;90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.1.2 AETIOLOGY

The causes of hypertension are classified into two main groups: primary and secondary hypertension.

i. PRIMARY OR ESSENTIAL HYPERTENSION

The cause of this form of hypertension is unknown. It is however the most common form of hypertension and contributes to about 95% of cases in adults.
RISK FACTORS FOR ESSENTIAL HYPERTENSION

Table 26: Risk factors of primary or essential hypertension

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Non-modifiable risk factors</th>
<th>Modifiable risk factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Age (above 45 in men and 55 years in women)</td>
<td>1. Overweight/central obesity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Race (more in black population)</td>
<td>2. Sedentary lifestyle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Family history</td>
<td>3. Smoking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. High salt intake</td>
<td>4. Low potassium consumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Low vitamin D</td>
<td>6. Low vitamin D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Stress</td>
<td>7. Stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Alcohol abuse</td>
<td>8. Alcohol abuse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 27: Causes of secondary hypertension and important clinical features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aetiology</th>
<th>Clinical features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Endocrine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cushing’s syndrome</td>
<td>Obesity, increased abdominal girth, purple striae, moon face</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acromegaly</td>
<td>Coarse facial appearance, headache, visual impairment, large hands and feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyroid disease</td>
<td>Hypothyroidism: weight loss despite increased appetite, excessive sweating, heat intolerance Hypothyroidism: weight gain, cold intolerance, constipation, lethargy, fatigue, hair loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperparathyroid disease</td>
<td>Bone and joint pains, abdominal pain, fatigue, nausea, vomiting, polyuria, kidney stones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conn’s syndrome</td>
<td>Muscle weakness or spasms, hypokalaemia, metabolic alkalosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrenal hyperplasia</td>
<td>Muscle weakness or spasms, hypokalaemia, metabolic alkalosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phaeochromocytoma</td>
<td>Sweating, tremors, palpitations, headaches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal parenchymal disease:</td>
<td>Peri-orbital oedema, nocturia, generalized body swelling, anaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Chronic glomerulonephritis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Adult polycystic disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Chronic tubulointerstitial nephritis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiovascular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aortic coarctation</td>
<td>Radio-femoral delay, bruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptives, steroids, vaso-pressin, non steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), psychoactive/recreational drugs (amphetamines, cocaine)</td>
<td>Look out for these medicines in patient's history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstructive sleep apnoea</td>
<td>Apnoeic during sleep, daytime sleepiness, snoring</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.1.3 CLINICAL PRESENTATION

i. SYMPTOMS\textsuperscript{7,18}

Hypertension is the leading cause of death in Sub-Saharan Africa yet hypertension is generally asymptomatic. Onset of symptoms generally heralds onset of complications such as eye, heart and kidney disease.

Occasionally hypertensives may have the following symptoms:
- Palpitation
- Headache
- Breathlessness
- Chest pain
- Easy fatigability
- Transient loss of consciousness
- Visual disturbance
- Seizure

ii. SIGNS\textsuperscript{1,9}

The signs seen are usually due to the underlying pathology or complication of the hypertension.
- Displaced apex due to enlarged heart
- Renal bruit (renovascular hypertension)
- Radio-femoral delay (coarctation of aorta)
- S3 heart sound (heart failure)
- S4 heart sound (hypertensive heart disease)
- Flame-shaped haemorrhages, cotton wool spots and papilloedema in the eye

\textit{Refer to chapter 3 on symptoms and signs for further information.}

ADDITIONAL INDICES AND SIGNS TO LOOK OUT FOR ON PHYSICAL EXAMINATION\textsuperscript{1,9}

- Body Mass Index (BMI)
  Ideal BMI <25 kg/m\textsuperscript{2}, overweight 25–30 kg/m\textsuperscript{2}, obese >30 kg/m\textsuperscript{2}
- Waist circumference (WC)
  Ideal WC <94 cm in men and <80 cm in women; in the obese, WC in men >102 cm; women >88 cm
- Peripheral pulses:
  - Absent (peripheral artery disease)
  - Weak (peripheral artery disease, cardiac disease)
  - Irregular (cardiac arrhythmias)
  - Unilateral weakness (hemiparesis or hemiplegia)

5.1.4 COMPLICATIONS OF HYPERTENSION

Hypertension is associated with multiple organ damage involving the heart, brain, kidneys, eyes and blood vessels\textsuperscript{10}. Early detection and management of end-organ-damage will improve the outcome of management of hypertension. Hypertension combined with unhealthy diet (high salt intake and alcohol abuse), obesity, smoking, dyslipidaemia, reduced physical activity and diabetes, is associated with increased mortality\textsuperscript{4}.

The complications of hypertension:
- Stroke
- Subarachnoid haemorrhage
- Hypertensive encephalopathy
- Atherosclerosis
- Aortic dissection
- Arrhythmias
- Chronic kidney disease
- Retinopathy
- Heart attack or myocardial infarction
- Left ventricular hypertrophy
- Heart failure (systolic and diastolic)
- Pre-eclampsia/eclampsia
5.1.5 MANAGEMENT OF HYPERTENSION RELEVANT FOR ALL LEVELS OF CARE

The overall goal of managing hypertension is to adequately control the BP and maintain it at target levels as well as control risk factors and promote a healthy lifestyle in order to reduce associated morbidity and mortality.

The recommended BP levels are\(^1,8\):
- \( BP < 140/90 \) mmHg in all patients
- Provided treatment is well tolerated, \( BP \) target can be lowered to \( 130/80 \) mmHg or less in most patients
- Patients \(<65\) years: the recommended target SBP ranges between \( 120-129 \) mmHg
- Patients \(\geq 65\) years: the recommended target SBP ranges between \( 130-139 \) mmHg
- Patients \(\geq 80\) years: the recommended SBP target ranges between \( 130–139 \) mmHg if tolerated
- The recommended DBP target is \(<90 \) mmHg irrespective of age and level of risk or comorbidities

➔ NB: Tight blood pressure control or low targets in the elderly put them at risk of syncope and kidney disease.

i. INVESTIGATION

BLOOD PRESSURE (BP) MEASUREMENT

ia. BP MEASUREMENT IN THE HEALTH FACILITY

Proper measurement of BP is very vital to accurately diagnose hypertension. The current standard of care for blood pressure measurement is the automated sphygmomanometer for use both in hospitals and at home. Other available BP measuring tools that can be used are the anaeroid and the mercury sphygmomanometers. The use of the mercury sphygmomanometer is currently discouraged because of the mercury content.

Below is the recommended way of taking BP measurements at the health facility.

Recommended method for BP measurement in the health facility setting\(^1,2\):
- Patient should sit comfortably for 3–5 minutes before BP measurement.
- The systolic blood pressure should be initially measured by palpating the radial pulse.
- Take three BP measurements 1–2 minutes apart. Additional measurements should be performed if the first two readings differ by \( >10 \) mmHg. The patient’s BP is the average of the last two BP readings.
- At patient’s first visit, measure the BP in both arms, and if \( >10 \) mmHg difference, the arm with the higher reading is used for future BP measurement.
- The patient should be comfortably seated, the arm should be exposed and supported at the level of the heart.
- Ensure that the patient has not smoked or ingested caffeine-containing foods or drinks in the previous 30 minutes before the BP measurement. (Advise patient to avoid these substances on subsequent visits).
- The appropriate cuff size should be selected for the patient. A large cuff (15 cm) is preferred for patients with a mid–upper arm circumference (MUAC) \( >33 \) cm. Those with MUAC \(<33 \) cm require the standard cuff (12 cm). The bladder within the cuff should encircle 80% of the arm during the BP measurement.
- In patients with suspected orthostatic hypotension (low BP on standing) such as the elderly and diabetics, measure BP after 1 and 3 minutes of standing at their first consultation.
- Use Korotkoff I and V (disappearance) to identify SBP and DBP respectively during auscultatory BP measurement.
- In patients with atrial fibrillation (irregular pulse) and other arrhythmias, take repeated BP measurements to improve accuracy.

(Adapted From The Kenyan National Guidelines for Cardiovascular Diseases Management, 2018 & the 2018 ESC/ESH Guidelines for the Management of Arterial Hypertension)
ib. OUT-OF-OFFICE/CLINIC BP MEASUREMENT

BP measurement outside the health facility can be done in two ways: ambulatory blood pressure monitoring (ABPM) and home blood pressure monitoring (HBPM). These two remove the effect of white coat hypertension and also give BP measurements that are more reflective of the patient's BP.

➔ Refer to the introduction section under hypertension for definition of white coat hypertension.

AMBULATORY BP MONITORING (ABPM)

ABPM involves the use of a device that records and provides the average BP measurements over a given period, usually 24 hours. The device is usually set to take the BP measurements every 15-30 minutes and provides the average BP readings for daytime, night time and at the end of the 24 hours. Compared to the office BP measurement, the ABPM is a better predictor of cardiovascular events like myocardial infarction (MI) and stroke.

HOME BP MONITORING (HBPM)

HBPM is self-blood pressure monitoring that involves the use of validated, semi-automated BP monitors to record BP for at least 3 days before each clinic visit. At each BP measurement, the patient should be well relaxed, (at least 3-5 minutes rest), comfortable and should take two measurements 1-2 minutes apart. The average of all the BP readings will be used in assessing the patient's BP. HBPM is also a better predictor of CVDs than office BP measurement.

Table 28: Hypertension cutoff values for office and out-of-office BP measurements

(Adapted from The 2018 ESC/ESH Guidelines For The Management Of Arterial Hypertension)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Systolic (mmHg)</th>
<th>Diastolic (mmHg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Office BP</td>
<td>≥140</td>
<td>≥90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambulatory BP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daytime (or awake) mean</td>
<td>≥135</td>
<td>≥85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Night-time (or asleep) mean</td>
<td>≥120</td>
<td>≥70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24-hour mean</td>
<td>≥130</td>
<td>≥80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home BP mean</td>
<td>≥135</td>
<td>≥85</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ii. NON-PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT FOR ALL LEVELS OF CARE

Table 29: Non-pharmacological treatment for all levels

(Adapted from The Kenyan National Guidelines For Cardiovascular Diseases Management, 2018 & The 2018 ESC/ESH Guidelines For The Management Of Arterial Hypertension)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lifestyle modification</th>
<th>Level of evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reduce salt intake/avoid adding salt to food at table (dietary salt should be restricted to &lt;5 g per day)</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular intake of fruits, vegetables, fish, and unsaturated fatty acids (e.g. olive oil); consume low-fat dairy products and reduce intake of red meat</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight reduction among hypertensive patients who are either obese or overweight, aim at BMI range of 20-25 kg/m² and waist circumference of &lt;94 cm in men and &lt;80 cm in women</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular exercise (30 minutes of moderate-intensity aerobic exercise such as walking, jogging, cycling, swimming, skipping, etc. 5 to 7 days per week)</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduce or avoid alcohol consumption (Limit alcohol to &lt;14 units per week for men and &lt;8 units per week for women)</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avoid or stop smoking; refer patient to support groups to help in their cessation of smoking</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.1.6 MANAGEMENT OF HYPERTENSION ACCORDING TO LEVEL OF CARE

i. HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR

ia. LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

- Urinalysis (urine dipstick)
- Random blood sugar

➔ If not available or results are abnormal, refer to a facility with a doctor.

ib. PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT (FOR PHYSICIAN ASSISTANTS)

GRADE 1 HYPERTENSION (SBP 140-159 mmHg, DBP 90-99 mmHg) with inadequate control after 3 months of lifestyle modification or if patient has more than 3 risk factors:

- Male
- Age (men >55 years, women >65 years)
- Smoking
- Obesity (including abdominal obesity)
- Dyslipidaemia (high blood cholesterol)
- Impaired fasting glucose
- Family history of early coronary artery disease

Recommended therapy for PHYSICIAN ASSISTANTS (LOE A) (Refer to table 32 for doses)

- Monotherapy: thiazide-like diuretic or calcium channel blockers (CCB)
- If after 2-4 weeks of treatment response is not adequate, add second drug (dual therapy):
  CCB + Thiazide-like diuretic

➔ If BP remains uncontrolled (refer to treatment objectives for target BP values), refer patient to the next level of care: health facility with a doctor.

GRADE 2 HYPERTENSION (SBP 160-179 mmHg, DBP 100-109 mmHg)

Recommended therapy (LOE A)

- Dual therapy preferred: CCB + thiazide-like diuretic

➔ If BP remains uncontrolled (refer to treatment objectives for target BP values), refer patient to the next level of care (health facility with a doctor).

Criteria for referring a hypertensive patient to a health facility with a doctor:

- Patients who have SBP >180 mmHg and/or DBP > 110 mmHg
- Patients who have not attained target BP despite 4 weeks of adequate antihypertensive treatment
- Patients with pre-existing diabetes mellitus or blood sugar suggestive of diabetes mellitus
- Patients with HIV/AIDS
- Hypertensives with complications such as heart disease, stroke and kidney disease
ii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR

ii.a. LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Full blood cell count
- Urinalysis
- Blood glucose
- Blood urea, electrolytes and creatinine (including eGFR)
- Serum lipids
- Serum uric acid
- Chest X-ray
- 12-lead Electrocardiogram (ECG)

ii.b. PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT

GRADE 1 HYPERTENSION (SBP 140-159 mmHg, DBP 90-99 mmHg) with inadequate control after 3 months of lifestyle modification or if patient has more than 3 risk factors:
- Male
- Age (men >55 years, women >65 years)
- Smoking
- Obesity (including abdominal obesity)
- Dyslipidaemia (high blood cholesterol)
- Impaired fasting glucose
- Family history of early coronary artery disease

Recommended therapy (Level of evidence A)
- Monotherapy: thiazide-like diuretic or calcium channel blockers (CCB)
  ➔ If after 2–4 weeks of treatment response is not adequate, add second drug (dual therapy):
    CCB + Thiazide-like diuretic.

GRADE 2 HYPERTENSION (SBP 160-179 mmHg, DBP 100-109 mmHg)
Recommended therapy (Level of evidence A)
- Dual therapy preferred: CCB + Thiazide-like diuretic or
- ACE Inhibitor + Thiazide-like diuretic or
- ACE Inhibitor + CCB
  ➔ Add third drug (multi-therapy) if response is not adequate after 2-4 weeks of treatment:
    ACE Inhibitor + CCB + thiazide-like diuretic.

GRADE 3 HYPERTENSION (SBP ≥180 mmHg, DBP ≥110 mmHg)
Recommended therapy (Level of evidence A)
- Use dual therapy at the beginning:
  ACE Inhibitor + CCB or CCB + thiazide-like diuretic or ACE inhibitor + thiazide-like diuretic
  ➔ If response is not adequate within 2–4 weeks, add a third drug: ACE Inhibitor + CCB + thiazide-like diuretic.
- ACE inhibitors are preferred in facilities that can monitor the potassium levels of patients
- Elderly patients may require lower doses of medication [e.g. half the dose of Beta-blockers; Amlodipine: give 2.5mg instead of 5mg]
- Add on therapy should be at lower doses for Beta-blockers and reduced for ACEI if patient is elderly or is on diuretics
Replace ACEI with ARBs, if patient cannot tolerate ACEI

➔ If BP remains uncontrolled (refer to treatment objectives for target BP values), refer patient to the next level of care: health facility with a physician specialist.

Criteria for referring a hypertensive patient to a specialist

- All pregnant women with hypertension (refer to an obstetrician)
- Patients with abnormal results on urine dipstick or blood tests i.e. full blood cell count (anaemia), abnormal blood urea nitrogen (BUN)/blood urea, electrolytes and creatinine (BUE-Cr)
- Adolescents and children diagnosed with hypertension (refer to a paediatrician)
- Patients with suspected secondary cause of hypertension
- Patients with chronic heart disease, heart failure and coronary artery disease (refer to a cardiologist)
- Patients with renal insufficiency or chronic kidney disease (refer to a nephrologist)
- Patients with stroke or transient ischaemic attack, intracerebral haemorrhage, vascular dementia and lacunar infarction (refer to a neurologist)
- Patients with peripheral arterial disease (refer to a cardiologist or a vascular surgeon)
- Geriatric patients (≥80 years) being diagnosed with hypertension for the first time

iii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST OR FAMILY PHYSICIAN

MANAGEMENT OF HYPERTENSION FOR A HEALTH FACILITY WITH A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST

Investigation for a health facility with a physician specialist:

- All investigation under levels 1 and 2:
  - Echocardiogram for those with symptoms and signs of hypertensive heart disease
  - Phaeochromocytoma – resting plasma catecholamines, urinary catecholamines and metabolites (metanephrines), CT scan of abdomen
  - Cushing’s syndrome – dexamethasone suppression test (overnight, low dose and high dose), 24 hour urinary free cortisol, plasma Adrenocorticotropic hormone levels, Corticotropin releasing hormone test, adrenal CT scan, pituitary MRI
  - Acromegaly – growth hormone level, glucose tolerance test, insulin-like growth factor-1 levels, MRI scan of head (pituitary tumour)
  - Hyperparathyroid disease – serum parathyroid hormone, serum calcium, 24 hour urinary calcium, serum alkaline phosphatase
  - Thyroid disease – serum TSH, free T3, free T4
  - Renal parenchymal diseases – urinalysis, renal ultrasound, renal biopsy
  - Renal artery stenosis – doppler of renal arteries, CT angio gram of kidneys

Pharmacological treatment:

➔ Elevated BP without evidence of target organ damage (TOD)

In hypertensive patients with no target-organ injury (preclinical CVD or a history of CVD), modestly lowering the target BP to <140/90 mmHg is recommended.

➔ Elevated BP with target organ damage, preclinical CVD, or CVD (secondary prevention)

For hypertensives with evidence of target-organ damage, BP levels should be consistently maintained below the target level of 130/80 mmHg. Physicians should look out for the following when managing patients with evidence of target organ damage:

- Albuminuria; spot urine albumin: creatinine ratio >200mg/g
- Abnormal renal function (with estimated glomerular filtration rate [eGFR] <60 ml/min/1.73m²)
- ECG with evidence of LVH
Metabolic syndrome
Framingham risk score corresponding to >20% 10-year CHD risk
Glucose intolerance [2-hour post-prandial glucose $\geq 7.8$ mmol/l]
Impaired fasting glucose [5.6-6.9 mmol/l]
Diabetes mellitus, and/or overt clinical CVD

$\Rightarrow$ Most of the patients with TOD require multiple antihypertensives in order to maintain BP levels below the target level of 130/80 mmHg.

$\Rightarrow$ Gradually reducing the BP over several weeks (or more) to the recommended target BP level is preferable.

$\Rightarrow$ Caution must be taken to avoid rapidly lowering BP since rapid drop in BP can increase the risk of target-organ ischemia/dysfunction, particularly in hypertensives with widespread vascular disease and/or chronic kidney disease.

### iii.a. LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

- Full blood cell count
- Urinalysis
- Blood glucose
- Blood urea, electrolytes and creatinine (including eGFR)
- Serum lipids
- Serum uric acid
- Chest X-ray
- 12-lead electrocardiogram (ECG)

### iii.b. SPECIAL INVESTIGATION FOR PATIENTS WITH SECONDARY HYPERTENSION

**Phaeochromocytoma**
- Resting plasma catecholamines
- Urinary catecholamines and metabolites (metanephrines)
- CT scan of abdomen

**Cushing's syndrome**
- Dexamethasone suppression test (overnight, low dose and high dose)
- 24h urinary free cortisol
- Plasma adrenocorticotropic hormone levels
- Corticotropin releasing hormone test
- Adrenal CT scan, pituitary MRI

**Acromegaly**
- Growth hormone level
- Glucose tolerance test
- Insulin-like growth factor 1 levels, MRI scan of head (pituitary tumour)

**Hyperparathyroid disease**
- Serum parathyroid hormone
- Serum calcium
- 24-hour urinary calcium
- Serum alkaline phosphatase
Thyroid disease
- Serum thyroid stimulating hormone
- Free T3
- Free T4

Renal parenchymal diseases
- Urinalysis
- Renal ultrasound

Renal artery stenosis
- Doppler of renal arteries
- CT angiogram of kidneys

iii. PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT

ELEVATED BP WITHOUT EVIDENCE OF TARGET ORGAN DAMAGE (TOD)
In hypertensive patients with no target-organ injury (preclinical CVD or a history of CVD), modestly lowering the target BP to <140/90 mmHg is recommended.

ELEVATED BP WITH TARGET ORGAN DAMAGE, PRECLINICAL CVD, OR CVD (SECONDARY PREVENTION)
For hypertensive patients with evidence of target organ damage, BP levels should be consistently maintained below the target level of 130/80 mmHg. Physicians should look out for the following when managing patients with evidence of target organ damage:
- Albuminuria; spot urine albumin: creatinine ratio >200mg/g
- Abnormal renal function (with estimated glomerular filtration rate [eGFR] <60 ml/min/1.73 m²)
- ECG evidence of LVH
- Metabolic syndrome
- Framingham risk score corresponding to >20% 10-year CHD risk
- Glucose intolerance [2-hour post-load glucose ≥7.8 mmol/l]
- Impaired fasting glucose [5.6–6.9 mmol/l]
- Diabetes mellitus, and/or overt clinical CVD
- Most of the patients with TOD require multiple antihypertensives in order to maintain BP levels below the target level of 130/80 mmHg
- Gradually reducing the BP over several weeks (or more) to the recommended target BP level is preferable
- Caution must be taken to avoid rapidly lowering BP since rapid drop in BP can increase the risk of target-organ ischemia/dysfunction, particularly in hypertensives with widespread vascular disease and/or chronic kidney disease.
Single pill combination therapy

With advancement in medicine, the need for patients to swallow several pills or tablets of medication has decreased. Medications now come in combinations that are contained in a single pill or tablet. The European Society of Cardiology currently recommend that these combination medicine can be used as first line management for patients with hypertension. The benefits of these combination medication cannot be underestimated. These combination medication reduce pill burden, increase compliance. The benefits are derived from the synergistic effects of the combinations.

Some common combinations that can be found on the market include:

- ACE-I + calcium channel blocker: Perindopril* + Amlodipine
- ACE-I + diuretic: Lisinopril + Hydrochlorothiazide
- ACE-I + calcium channel blocker + diuretic: Perindopril* + Amlodipine + Indapamide*
- Calcium channel blocker + Beta-blocker: Nifedipine + Atenolol
- ARB + calcium channel blocker: Irbesartan* + Amlodipine
- ARB + diuretic: Candesartan + Hydrochlorothiazide
- ARB + calcium channel blocker + diuretic: Valsartan + Amlodipine + Hydrochlorothiazide
- Beta-blocker + diuretic: Atenolol + Hydrochlorothiazide

\( \rightarrow \) N.B. * = drugs not in the Essential Medicines List (EML)
5.1.7 RESISTANT HYPERTENSION

Resistant hypertension is defined as the failure to control BP on ≥3 antihypertensive medications (including a diuretic) despite giving adequate doses, or controlling BP but on ≥4 antihypertensives including a diuretic. Co-morbidities such as obesity, type 2 diabetes mellitus, and CKD have been associated with the rapidly increasing prevalence of resistant hypertension in Africa\textsuperscript{13,14}. Inadequate control of BP is confirmed by ABPM or HBPM in patients whose adherence to therapy has been confirmed\textsuperscript{1}.

Practical tips for lowering BP in resistant hypertension

Treatable causes of resistant hypertension should be sought for and managed as much as possible. These causes include obstructive sleep apnoea (OSA), high-salt/low-potassium diet, alcohol abuse, NSAIDS, nasal decongestants, cocaine\textsuperscript{12}. Below is the recommendation for BP control in resistant hypertension:

**Therapeutic recommendations for lowering BP in resistant hypertension**

**Scrutinize patient’s current drug regimen:**
- Stop medications (e.g. NSAIDs) that can affect BP lowering
- Look out for risk factors such as alcohol abuse and high salt intake which undermine pharmacological BP lowering

**Review current antihypertensive drug regimen:**
Avoid undesirable therapeutic combinations that are poorly tolerated and/or minimally effective (see recommended combinations on page 65)
- Include ≥1 diuretic that is appropriate for the level of kidney function
- Consider adding a second diuretic with a complementary mechanism of action (e.g. Chlorthalidone* & spironolactone)
- If systolic heart function is normal (ejection fraction ≥50%), consider the simultaneous use of a dihydropyridine (DHP) and a non-DHP CCB
- If available, use noninvasively measured vascular function to guide therapeutic selections
- Consider referral to a hypertension specialist
Stage 1: 140-159/90-99 mmHg (No associated cardiovascular risks or abnormalities)

- Monitore lifestyle management for 3 months

- Target BP achieved (<140/90)
  - NO: Start antihypertensive therapy
  - YES: Continue follow-up

Stage 2: 160-179/100-109 mmHg

- Hypertension with comorbidities/complications

- Blood pressure ≥140/90 mmHg in all patients measured on at least 3 different occasions

- Initiate lifestyle modification (exercise, decrease salt intake and alcohol consumption, and stop smoking)

- Monitor lifestyle management for 3 months

- Target BP achieved (<140/90)
  - NO: Start antihypertensive therapy
  - YES: Continue follow-up

**Figure 8:**
Threshold for initial management of hypertension (Adapted from Kenyan National Guidelines For Cardiovascular Diseases Management, 2018)

**Figure 9:**
Antihypertensive regimen for patients (Adapted from Kenyan National Guidelines For Cardiovascular Diseases Management, 2018)
Table 31: Antihypertensive medications, indications and contraindications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Conditions favouring use</th>
<th>Compelling</th>
<th>Possible</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diuretics (thiazide-like; thiazide)</td>
<td>Heart failure (HF)</td>
<td>Gout</td>
<td>Pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indapamide*, Bendrofluazide</td>
<td>Elderly hypertensives</td>
<td></td>
<td>Beta-blockers (especially Atenolol)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Bendroflumethiazide)</td>
<td>Isolated systolic HTN (ISH)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypertensives of African origin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diuretics (loop)</td>
<td>Compelling</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frusemide, Torasemide*</td>
<td>Renal insufficiency</td>
<td>Pregnancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diuretics (anti-aldosterone)</td>
<td>HF</td>
<td>Renal failure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spironolactone</td>
<td>Post-myocardial infarction</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperkalaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCB (dihydropyridine)</td>
<td>Elderly patients</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amlodipine, Nifedipine</td>
<td>Isolated systolic hypertensive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Angina pectoris</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peripheral vascular disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carotid atherosclerosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pregnancy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCB non-dihydropyridine</td>
<td>Angina pectoris</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verapamil, Diltiazem*</td>
<td>Carotid atherosclerosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Supraventricular tachycardia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACEI</td>
<td>HF</td>
<td>Pregnancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lisinopril, Perindopril*</td>
<td>LF dysfunction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Post-myocardial infarction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Non-diabetic nephropathy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Type 1 diabetic nephropathy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prevention of diabetic microalbuminuria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Proteinuria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARB</td>
<td>Type 2 diabetic nephropathy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valsartan, Losartan</td>
<td>Type 2 diabetic microalbuminuria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Proteinuria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LVH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ACEI cough or intolerance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta-blockers</td>
<td>Angina pectoris</td>
<td>Asthma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bisoprolol, Carvediol</td>
<td>Post-myocardial infarction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HF (Carvedilol, Metoprolol, Bisoprolol)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tachyarrhythmias</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AV block (grade 2 or 3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pregnancy (Atenolol)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peripheral vascular disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bradycardia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glucose intolerance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Metabolic syndrome</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Athletes and physically active patients</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Non-dihydropyridine CCBs (Verapamil, Diltiazem*)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Antihypertensive medications and the common side effects
(Adapted from Kenyan National Guidelines for Cardiovascular Diseases Management, 2018)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Usual monotherapy (per os)</th>
<th>Maximum daily dose (per os)</th>
<th>Possible side effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Long-acting CCB</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amlodipine</td>
<td>5mg OD</td>
<td>10mg OD</td>
<td>Oedema, Headache, Palpitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Felodipine</td>
<td>5mg OD</td>
<td>10mg OD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nifedipine</td>
<td>Retard tabs: 10-20mg BD</td>
<td>Retard tabs: 30mg BD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thiazide diuretic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bendrofluazide</td>
<td>2.5mg OD</td>
<td>5mg OD</td>
<td>Hypokalaemia, Hyperuricaemia, Hypercalcium, Hyperglycaemia, Rash, Dyslipidaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hydrochlorothiazide</td>
<td>12.5mg OD</td>
<td>25mg OD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thiazide-like diuretics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indapamide*</td>
<td>2.5mg OD</td>
<td>5mg OD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chlorthalidone*</td>
<td>25mg OD</td>
<td>50mg OD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ACE inhibitor</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Captopril*</td>
<td>25-50 BD or TDS</td>
<td>50mg TDS</td>
<td>Cough (ACEI), Hyperkalaemia, Increased serum creatinine, Angioedema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enalapril</td>
<td>5-20mg daily in 1 or 2 divided doses</td>
<td>20mg daily in 1 or 2 divided doses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lisinopril</td>
<td>10mg OD</td>
<td>40mg OD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Perindopril*</td>
<td>4mg OD or 5mg OD</td>
<td>8mg OD or 10mg OD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ramipril</td>
<td>2.5mg OD</td>
<td>10mg OD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Beta-blockers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Atenolol</td>
<td>25mg OD</td>
<td>100mg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bisoprolol</td>
<td>2.5mg OD</td>
<td>20mg OD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carvedilol</td>
<td>6.25mg OD</td>
<td>25mg BD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Labetalol</td>
<td>100mg BD</td>
<td>400mg BD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Metoprolol succinate</td>
<td>25mg OD</td>
<td>100mg OD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nebivolol*</td>
<td>5mg OD</td>
<td>20mg OD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ARB</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Candesartan</td>
<td>8mg OD</td>
<td>32mg OD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Irbesartan*</td>
<td>150mg OD</td>
<td>300mg OD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Losartan</td>
<td>50mg OD</td>
<td>100mg OD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Telmisartan*</td>
<td>40mg OD</td>
<td>80mg OD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Valsartan</td>
<td>80mg OD</td>
<td>160mg OD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 32: Antihypertensive medications and the common side effects**

**Less commonly used Antihypertensive medications**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Usual monotherap</th>
<th>Maximum daily dose</th>
<th>Possible side effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Centrally acting agents</td>
<td>Metyldopa</td>
<td>250mg BD or TDS</td>
<td>1000mg/day</td>
<td>Angina, Orthostatic Hypotension, Gynaecomastia, Rash, Erectile dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clonidine</td>
<td>0.1mg BD</td>
<td>2.4mg/day</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phenoxybenzamine*</td>
<td>10mg BD</td>
<td>40mg TDS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium-sparing diuretics</td>
<td>Amiloride*</td>
<td>5mg OD/ divided</td>
<td>10mg OD or divided dose</td>
<td>Hyperkalaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Triamterene</td>
<td>25mg OD or divided dose</td>
<td>100mg OD or divided dose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spironolactone</td>
<td>25-50mg OD</td>
<td>50–100mg daily in divided dose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loop diuretics</td>
<td>Torasemide*</td>
<td>5mg OD</td>
<td>20mg OD</td>
<td>Hyperuricaemia, Hypokalaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Furosemide</td>
<td>20mg OD</td>
<td>80mg OD or divided dose</td>
<td>Hyperpotension, Palpitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vasodilators</td>
<td>Hydralazine</td>
<td>25mg BD or TDS</td>
<td>150mg/day</td>
<td>Hyperpotension, Diarrhoea, Tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpha 1 receptor blocker</td>
<td>Prazosin</td>
<td>1mg BD-TDS</td>
<td>20mg/day</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Terazosin</td>
<td>1mg OD</td>
<td>20mg/day</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ACE**: angiotensin converting enzyme; **ARB**: angiotensin receptor blocker; **CCB**: Calcium channel blocker; **OD**: administer once daily; **BD**: administer twice daily; **TDS**: administer 3 times daily. **= Drugs not on the EML**
5.1.8 HYPERTENSIVE EMERGENCY
This refers to severely elevated BP (SBP >180 mmHg and/or DBP >120 mmHg) associated with progressive organ dysfunction. Patients with hypertensive emergencies require immediate BP reduction in order to avoid or limit target end organ damage and therefore require in-patient management with close monitoring.

Examples of hypertensive emergencies include:
- Hypertensive encephalopathy
- Acute left ventricular failure
- Acute myocardial infarction
- Acute kidney injury
- Aortic dissection
- Subarachnoid haemorrhage
- Acute retinal haemorrhage or papilloedema

i. CLINICAL PRESENTATION
Patients present with the following acute symptoms and severe hypertension:
- A = Altered consciousness
- B = Breathlessness
- C = Chest pain (in ischaemia)
- D = Deficit (weakness in one or more limbs) or decreased urinary output
- E = Oedema
- F = Fundus if feasible - haemorrhages, exudates, papilloedema
- G = Generalized seizures

ii. MANAGEMENT OF HYPERTENSIVE EMERGENCY PER LEVEL OF CARE

iiia. HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR
➔ This is a medical emergency. Delay in the care will lead to increased mortality. Refer to the next level of care or to a specialist as soon as possible.

INVESTIGATION
Refer to investigation for hypertension stated above for each level.

TREATMENT
- Resuscitate patient
- Give oxygen if available to patients who require oxygen
- Secure intravenous access
- Start oral antihypertensive (thiazides or calcium channel blockers)
➔ Refer to a health facility with a doctor/physician specialist for further management.
➔ If patient is unconscious, pass nasogastric (NG) tube (if expertise is available), refer immediately.
ii.b. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR OR WITH A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST

INVESTIGATION
Refer to investigation for hypertension stated above for each level.
Head CT scan should be performed for hypertensive emergencies involving the central nervous system (CNS) (e.g. stroke, intracerebral haemorrhage, subarachnoid haemorrhage).

TREATMENT
➔ Initiate iv antihypertensives (refer to table 32) and institute rigorous monitoring of patient’s vital signs.

Table 33: Hypertensive emergency management options
(Adapted from Kenyan National Guidelines For Cardiovascular Diseases Management, 2018)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Management option</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acute ischaemic stroke</td>
<td>Antihypertensive therapy is not routinely recommended for patients with acute stroke and hypertension (refer to stroke chapter for details)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute intracerebral haemorrhage</td>
<td>Lower BP when the SBP is &gt;200 mmHg or the DBP is &gt;110 mmHg If there are signs of raised ICP, maintain mean arterial pressure (MAP) just below 130 mmHg (or SBP &lt;180 mmHg) for first 24 hours after onset; maintain MAP below 110mmHg (or SBP &lt;160 mmHg) for first 24 hours after symptoms onset for patients without raised ICP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subarachnoid haemorrhage</td>
<td>Maintain SBP &lt;160 mmHg until the aneurysm is treated or cerebral vasospasm occurs. Oral Nimodipine* is used to prevent delayed ischaemic neurological deficits, but it is NOT indicated for treating acute hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aortic dissection</td>
<td>Immediately reduce the SBP &lt; 110 mmHg and maintain it at this level unless signs of end organ hypoperfusion are present; preferred treatment includes a combination of ▪ Opioid analgesics (morphine sulphate) ▪ Beta blockers (e.g. Labetalol, Esmolol*) or CCBs (e.g. Verapamil, Diltiazem*) Avoid Beta-blockers, if there is aortic valvular regurgitation or suspected cardiac tamponade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute myocardial infarction or heart attack</td>
<td>▪ Treat if SBP &gt;160 mmHg and/or DBP &gt;100 mmHg, reduce BP by 20-30% of baseline ▪ Thrombolytics are contraindicated if BP is &gt;185/100 mmHg; preferred medications include Beta-blockers &amp; Nitroglycerin*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute heart failure</td>
<td>Treat with vasodilators (in addition to diuretics) for SBP ≥140 mmHg, iv or sublingual Nitroglycerin* is the preferred agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-eclampsia/eclampsia</td>
<td>▪ Prepartum and intrapartum: SBP should be &lt;160 mmHg and DBP &lt;110 mmHg ▪ If the platelet count is &lt;100,000 cells/mm, SBP should be maintained below 150/100 mmHg ▪ Patients with eclampsia or pre-eclampsia should also be loaded with iv magnesium sulphate 4g diluted in 100ml normal saline given over 15 minutes then with an infusion of 2g/hour to avoid seizures ▪ Preferred medication: Hydralazine, Labetalol, Nifedipine ▪ Medication to avoid: Nitroprusside*, ACEIs, Esmolol*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute kidney injury (AKI)</td>
<td>▪ Slowly decrease BP by 20-25% within 24 hours using oral antihypertensives ▪ Do not aggressively drop the BP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.1.9 PATIENT INFORMATION/EDUCATION AT ALL LEVELS

- Inform the patients that the antihypertensive medicine will not cure their hypertension rather reduce BP level thereby reduce their risk of complications.
- Educate patients on how to take the antihypertensive medications and on the importance of follow-up.
- Educate patients on the complications of uncontrolled hypertension such as stroke, heart failure, acute myocardial infarction or heart attack, aortic dissection, cardiac arrest etc. and also on the importance of following their recommended treatment regimen.
- Patients should be advised on the usefulness of home blood pressure monitoring as it has been shown to improve cardiovascular outcomes compared to clinic/office BP measurements.
- Educate patients on the importance of maintaining a healthy lifestyle.

5.1.10 PREVENTION OF HYPERTENSION

Primary hypertension prevention is hinged mainly on avoiding and controlling modifiable risk factors. This can be achieved through lifestyle modification.

> Refer to non-pharmacological management of hypertension for lifestyle modifications, that can help prevent primary hypertension (paragraph 5.1.2 and chapter 2: risk factors).

---

**Table 34: Intravenous medications used in hypertensive emergencies**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Dose</th>
<th>Onset of action</th>
<th>Adverse effects</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iv Furosemide</td>
<td>20–40mg in 1-2 minutes</td>
<td>5–15 minutes</td>
<td>Hypovolemia, Hypokalemia</td>
<td>May be used in combination with other drugs to maintain their efficacy; indicated in acute left ventricular failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv Labetalol</td>
<td>20–80mg iv</td>
<td>5–10 minutes</td>
<td>Scalp tingling, Dizziness, Nausea, Heart block</td>
<td>Can be used in many hypertensive emergencies; avoid in acute heart failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv Nicardipine*</td>
<td>5–15mg per hour as iv</td>
<td>5–10 minutes</td>
<td>Tachycardia, Headache, Nausea</td>
<td>Can be used in many hypertensive emergencies, avoid in acute heart failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv Nitroglycerine*</td>
<td>5–100μg/min</td>
<td>2–5 minutes</td>
<td>Headache, Vomiting, Methemoglobinemia tolerance</td>
<td>Useful in myocardial ischemia with hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv or im Hydralazine</td>
<td>20–40mg (repeat PRN)</td>
<td>5–20 minutes</td>
<td>Headache, Palpitation, Oedema, Hypotension</td>
<td>Useful in pregnancy related hypertension</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* = Drugs not on the EML  PRN = as needed/required
(Adapted from the Indian Standard Treatment Guidelines on Hypertension, 2016)
REFERENCES


### LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABC</td>
<td>Airway, Breathing and Circulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aPTT</td>
<td>Activated Partial Thromboplastin Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI</td>
<td>Body Mass Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BP</td>
<td>Blood Pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHA2DS2-VASc</td>
<td>Congestive heart failure, Hypertension, Age &gt;/=75yrs; Diabetes; Prior Stroke/TIA/Thromboembolism; Vascular disease; Age 65-74years; Sex category</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CKD</td>
<td>Chronic Kidney Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Computed Tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVT</td>
<td>Deep vein thrombosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DWI</td>
<td>Diffusion Weighted Images</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECG</td>
<td>Electrocardiogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFP</td>
<td>Fresh frozen plasma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HASBLED</td>
<td>Hypertension, Abnormal liver/renal function, Stroke history, Bleeding predisposition, Labile INR, Elderly, Drug/alcohol usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HBA1c</td>
<td>Glycated Haemoglobin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICD</td>
<td>International Classification of Diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICP</td>
<td>Intracranial Pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INR</td>
<td>International Normalized Ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Intravenous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOE</td>
<td>Level of evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDT</td>
<td>Multidisciplinary team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI</td>
<td>Myocardial Infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRI</td>
<td>Magnetic Resonance Imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na</td>
<td>Sodium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NG</td>
<td>Naso Gastric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rTPA</td>
<td>recombinant Tissue Plasminogen Activator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAH</td>
<td>Subarachnoid Haemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIADH</td>
<td>Syndrome of Inappropriate Secretion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIA</td>
<td>Transient Ischemic Attack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOE</td>
<td>Trans-oesophageal echo-cardiogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tPA</td>
<td>Tissue Plasminogen Activator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTI</td>
<td>Urinary Tract Infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VTE</td>
<td>Venous Thromboembolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHO</td>
<td>World Health Organisation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.2.1 INTRODUCTION

i. DEFINITION

Stroke is defined by WHO as ‘a clinical syndrome consisting of rapidly developing clinical signs of focal (or global in case of coma) disturbance of cerebral function lasting more than 24 hours or leading to death with no apparent cause other than a vascular origin’\(^2\).

Stroke is typically associated with a neurological deficit caused by an acute focal injury of the central nervous system by a vascular cause, including cerebral infarction, intracerebral haemorrhage, and subarachnoid haemorrhage\(^2\). A more accurate definition stems from the definitions of the various classification of strokes in table 35.

ii. EPIDEMIOLOGY

Stroke is the leading cause of long-term disability and the second most common cause of death worldwide\(^3,4\). About 71% of all stroke deaths are in lower and middle income countries\(^5\). Whereas high-income countries show significant reductions in stroke incidence of about 42% over the last 40 years, a 100% increase in stroke incidences occurred in lower and middle income countries over the same period\(^6\). Sub-Saharan Africa has the highest burden of stroke with age-adjusted incidence of 316 per 100,000 people per year\(^7\), age-adjusted prevalence of up to 14.6 per 1000 people\(^8\), and case fatality of up to 43% at 1 month and 84% at 3 years\(^9,10\).

Ghana and most other African countries have witnessed the epidemiological transition in disease morbidity and mortality\(^11\). In the last few years, the leading causes of death have shifted from communicable diseases to a combination of both communicable and chronic NCDs\(^12\). The rising incidence of mortality associated with cardiovascular disease (CVD) especially stroke have been unmatched. For instance, in Accra, CVD moved from being the seventh and tenth cause of death in 1953 and 1966 respectively to number one cause of death in 1991 to date\(^13\). In Komfo Anokye Teaching Hospital, stroke constituted 9.1% of total medical adult admissions and 13.2% of all medical adult deaths from January 2006 to December 2007\(^11\).

In 2003, data collected showed that stroke was the fourth leading cause of death among in-patients in 32 sentinel hospitals in the 10 regions of Ghana\(^12\). The rising incidence and prevalence of hypertension in Ghana\(^14-17\) especially in the urban communities implies that the burden of stroke will continue to increase until immediate action is taken to stop this trend\(^11\).

iii. CLASSIFICATION OF STROKES

Based on the stroke definition in the ICD-11 of WHO, cerebrovascular disease has been categorized and defined as in table 35, next page.
iv. AETIOLOGY
Identifying the underlying cause of stroke helps in evaluating patients, choosing purposeful diagnostic tests, predicting prognosis, and planning secondary preventive measures of stroke in daily clinical practice.

Table 35: Classification of strokes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cerebrovascular disease categories and definitions (selected) in the ICD-11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stroke</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebral ischaemic stroke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intracerebral haemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Definition:</strong> Acute focal neurological dysfunction caused by focal infarction at single or multiple sites of the brain or retina; evidence of acute infarction may come either from:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ symptom duration lasting more than 24 hrs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ neuroimaging or other technique in the clinically relevant area of the brain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intracerebral haemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Definition:</strong> Acute neurological dysfunction caused by haemorrhage within the brain parenchyma or in the ventricular system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subarachnoid haemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Definition:</strong> Acute neurological dysfunction caused by subarachnoid haemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transient ischaemic attack†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Definition:</strong> A transient episode of focal neurological dysfunction caused by focal brain or retinal ischaemia without acute infarction in the clinically relevant area of the brain or retina; symptoms should resolve completely within 24 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebrovascular disease with no acute cerebral symptom*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Silent cerebral infarct (defined as an infarct demonstrated on neuroimaging or at autopsy that has not caused acute dysfunction of the brain)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Silent cerebral microbleed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Silent cerebral macrobleed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Silent white matter abnormalities associated with vascular disease (defined as abnormalities in the cerebral white matter of proven or assumed vascular origin)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Categories not classified as “stroke”

v. RISK FACTORS
The risk factors of stroke can be grouped under modifiable and non-modifiable risk factors.
The top 11 potential modifiable risk factors associated with stroke occurrence according to the SIREN (the largest study done on stroke in Africa) has been arranged in decreasing order of magnitude in table 37.
These 11 identified risk factors account for 98.2% of population attributable risk with stroke among people from Ghana and Nigeria.18
5.2.2 CLINICAL PRESENTATION

i. SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS
The sudden onset of the symptoms is an important clue in the diagnosis of stroke. The time of symptom onset is crucial as it determines the mode of treatment. If the actual time is not known, the last time the patient was seen well should be used. A brief neurological examination should commence from the very moment the patient is seen.

Table 37: Risk factors of stroke

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk factors of stroke</th>
<th>Non-modifiable</th>
<th>Modifiable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>■ Age</td>
<td></td>
<td>■ Hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ Sex</td>
<td></td>
<td>■ Dyslipidaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ Ethnicity</td>
<td></td>
<td>■ Regular meat consumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ Family history</td>
<td></td>
<td>■ Elevated waist to hip ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ Hypertension</td>
<td></td>
<td>■ Diabetes mellitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ Dyslipidaemia</td>
<td></td>
<td>■ Low intake of green leafy vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ Regular meat consumption</td>
<td></td>
<td>■ Psychological stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ Elevated waist to hip ratio</td>
<td></td>
<td>■ Added salt at the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ Diabetes mellitus</td>
<td></td>
<td>■ Cardiac disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ Low intake of green leafy vegetables</td>
<td></td>
<td>■ Physical inactivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ Psychological stress</td>
<td></td>
<td>■ Current use of cigarettes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Symptoms
■ Weakness of the limbs (usually one sided)
■ Slurred speech
■ Facial droop on one side
■ Difficulty swallowing
■ Confusion
■ Loss of consciousness
■ Loss of sensation
■ Severe headaches that are usually unlike headaches in the past
■ Loss of balance or coordination
■ Vision changes in one eye or both
■ Seizures
■ Bladder and bowel incontinence
■ Nausea and vomiting
■ Behavioural changes

Signs
■ Hemiplegia or hemiparesis (complete or incomplete weakness of one side respectively)
■ Dysarthria (difficulty in articulation)
■ Aphasia/dysphasia (difficulty in forming speech)
■ Reduced level of consciousness
■ Cranial nerve palsies commonly facial nerve palsy/weakness
■ Nystagmus
■ Quadriplegic (weakness in all limbs) in brain stem strokes
■ Unilateral loss of sensation

→ Refer to chapter 3 of these guidelines for more detailed information.
5.2.3 MANAGEMENT ACCORDING TO LEVEL OF CARE

Management of acute stroke relies on brief but accurate history before any imaging or laboratory investigation is done. A quick non-contrast head CT scan is the most reasonable investigation to help identify the stroke type and appropriate management. Blood investigation may be carried out while waiting for image studies.

i. HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR

ia. LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

- Full blood cell count
- Blood sugar (instant finger stick glucose testing is acceptable in the emergency setting)

Laboratory investigation should not delay the referral.

ib. TREATMENT

- Assess ABC (airway, breathing and circulation) and correct any abnormalities if possible
- Perform a swallowing test, if patient fails do not give anything by mouth, pass an NG tube an NG tube
- Avoid lifting the patient on the affected limb to avoid shoulder subluxation
- Avoid putting objects into the patients mouth during a seizure episode; place patient on the lateral strong side, clear the area of sharp objects or obstacles and remove dentures or eyeglasses if present
- Elevate the head of the bed at 20–30 degrees
- Check vitals (blood pressure, pulse rate, respiratory rate, temperature) and random blood sugar
- Give suppository Paracetamol 1g if axillary temperatures are more than 37.2°C

Do not give Aspirin when there is no CT scan to rule out a bleed
- Give suppository Diazepam 10mg if seizures do not self-abort in less than 5 minutes

Refer the patient after less than 30 minutes to a health facility with a physician specialist and the capacity to perform a head CT. Provide pre-hospital notification to the referring health facility that a suspected stroke is en route so that appropriate resources will be mobilised before arrival of the patient.

ii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR

iia. LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

- Full blood cell count
- Blood sugar (instant finger stick glucose testing is acceptable in the emergency setting)
- Liver function test
- Lipid profile
- BUE & Cr
- HBA1C

iib. NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

- Non-contrast head CT scan
- ECG
iiic. TREATMENT

- Assess ABC (airway, breathing and circulation) and to correct any abnormalities if possible
- Perform a swallowing test, pass NG tube if patient fails and never give anything by mouth
- Avoid lifting the patient on the affected limb to avoid shoulder subluxation
- Avoid putting objects into the patient’s mouth during a seizure episode, place patient on the lateral strong side, clear the area of sharp objects or obstacles and remove dentures or eyeglasses if present
- Elevate the head of the bed at 20-30 degrees
- Check vitals (blood pressure, pulse rate, respiratory rate, temperature, RBS)
- Give suppository Paracetamol 1g if axillary temperatures are more than 37.2°C

**Do not give Aspirin when there is no CT scan to rule out a bleed**
- Give suppository Diazepam 10mg if seizures do not self-abort in less than 5 minutes

**If patient has no CT scan:**

- Patient showing signs of raised Intracranial Pressure (ICP), i.e. Cushing’s triad (high BP, low pulse and irregular respiration), dilated pupils, increasing somnolence or decreasing level of consciousness start management as outlined below and refer to a teaching hospital.
  - iv Mannitol 20% concentrated solution in a dose of range of 0.5-2g/kg body weigh every 6-8 hours over 48 hours; each dose should run over 15-30 minutes; if Mannitol is not available iv Furosemide is a good option (next step)
  - Use iv Furosemide if patient is a known CKD or has renal impairment
  - Oral Acetazolamide 250mg bd can be added if CT scan shows acute hydrocephalus
  - Oral statin can be added (e.g. Atorvastatin 20mg)
  - Monitor for seizures. If patient has a seizure give oral antiseizure medications (e.g. Carbamazepine 200mg daily or Levetiracetam 250mg daily, refer all recurrent seizures in a day or seizures lasting more than 30 minutes

**For BP management see chapter 5.1 on hypertension.**

iii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST/FAMILY PHYSICIAN

iiiia. LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

- Full blood cell count
- Blood sugar (instant finger stick glucose testing is acceptable in the emergency setting)
- Liver function test
- Lipid profile
- BUE & Cr
- HBA1C
- Thrombophilia screen for patients with no apparent cause of the stroke:
  - Antithrombin deficiency
  - Protein C deficiency
  - Protein S deficiency
  - Factor V Leiden
  - Prothrombin 20210 mutation
  - Antiphospholipid antibody
  - Homocysteine levels
iiib. NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

- Non-contrast head CT scan
- MRI if available
  - If available:
    - Carotid artery doppler for anterior circulation ischaemia
    - Vertebral artery doppler for posterior circulation ischaemia
    - Holter ECG
    - Echocardiogram

N.B.

- Non-contrast head CT is a rapidly obtained, highly sensitive, and relatively more available investigation method.
- Rapid brain MRI offers the additional advantage of being both highly sensitive and specific for ischaemic stroke, particularly in cases of suspected stroke mimics. In brain MRI, at least two sequences need to be done; diffusion weighted images (DWI) and apparent diffusion co-efficient (ADC). However, the availability and cost of MRI in Ghana limits its use in acute stroke.
- Holter ECG in suspected cardio-embolic stroke. A longer duration of this investigation is recommended (at least 72 hours) to diagnose atrial fibrillation. In some instances, insertable cardiac rhythm monitor (ICM) may be required in cryptogenic strokes.
- Echocardiogram, preferable trans-oesophageal echocardiogram (TOE) in suspected cases of cardio-embolic strokes.

![Figure 10: Non-contrast CT scan showing haemorrhagic stroke](image)
iiic. TREATMENT

1. HEAD CT SCAN CONFIRMED INFARCT

If possible, refer to a stroke unit within 4.5 hours after start of symptom for acute treatment of infarctive stroke. The three main principles of acute stroke care are:

→ Achieve timely recanalisation of the occluded artery and reperfusion of the ischaemic tissue
→ Optimise collateral flow
→ Avoid secondary brain injury
Acute reperfusion treatment *(table 39)*

There is enough evidence that iv thrombolysis with rtPA and endovascular thrombectomy with a retrievable stent improves neurologic outcomes in patients with acute ischaemic stroke. Both treatments should be administered as quickly as possible after stroke onset, can be combined, and are safe in appropriately selected candidates.

➔ NB: currently this is not widely available in Ghana.

The standard dose of iv rtPA, if available for acute ischaemic stroke, is 0.9mg/kg, with 10% administered as a bolus and the remainder infused over 1 hour. The total dose should not exceed 90mg. See *table 38* for inclusion and exclusion criteria for iv thrombolysis.

*Table 38: Indications and contraindications for iv thrombolysis*³³

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indications and contraindications for iv thrombolysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Eligibility criteria for tPA</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Diagnosis of ischaemic stroke causing measurable neurologic deficit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Time from onset of stroke symptoms less than 4.5 hours before tPA administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exclusion criteria for tPA</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>History</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• History of intracranial haemorrhage in the preceding 6 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Stroke or serious head or spinal trauma in the preceding 3 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Major surgery (e.g., cardiac, thoracic, abdominal, orthopaedic) in the previous 14 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Arterial puncture at a non-compressible site in the preceding 7 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Any other condition that could increase the risk of haemorrhage after tPA administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clinical</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Symptoms suggestive of subarachnoid haemorrhage (e.g., sudden onset of severe headache, stiff neck, photophobia, blurred/double vision)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Stroke symptoms due to another non-ischaemic acute neurological condition (e.g., seizure with post-ictal Todd’s paralysis, or focal neurological signs due to severe hypo- or hyperglycaemia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Severe hypertension refractory to antihypertensives such that target blood pressure &lt;185/110 mmHg cannot be achieved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Laboratory</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Blood glucose concentration &lt; 2.7 mmol/l or &gt; 22.2 mmol/l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Elevated activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• International Normalized Ratio (INR) &gt;1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Platelet count below 100,000 per cubic millimetre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Current use of direct thrombin inhibitors or direct factor Xa inhibitors with elevated insensitive global coagulation tests or a quantitative test of drug activity (i.e., Hemoclot for Dabigatran*, specific factor Xa activity assays for Rivaroxaban* and Apixaban*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CT or MRI findings</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Any haemorrhage on brain CT or MRI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• CT showing early signs of extensive infarction, or MRI showing an infarct volume &gt; 150 ml on diffusion-weighted imaging</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If patient is not a candidate for thrombolysis, then the following should be instituted:

• Start oral **Aspirin** 50–325mg (LOE A) daily in acute state
  • **Clopidogrel** is a better option after the acute phase in secondary prevention (LOE B)
  • Other options are available (see *pages 87/88* on secondary prevention of stroke)
• Oral **Atorvastatin** 40–80mg nocte or **Rosuvastatin** 20–40mg nocte
  ➔ Do not crash the BPs with iv antihypertensives (use iv only in hypertensive emergency, see *pages 71-72*)
• Manage blood sugars and maintain sugars between 6-10 mmol/l
• Manage pyrexia with preferably iv paracetamol and tepid sponging
• SC Enoxaparin 40mg or Dalteparin 5000 IU daily as thrombo-prophylaxis
• Start physiotherapy as soon as possible
• Patients with carotid artery stenosis of more than 50% and symptomatic can be considered for carotid endarterectomy or stenting

2. TRANSIENT ISCHAEMIC ATTACK
The risk stratification tool, the ABCD2 score has been developed to help identify patients at high risk of recurrent events with the aim of determining the need for urgent hospitalisation and investigation\textsuperscript{21}. The total ABCD2 score ranges from 0 to 7. A score of 4 or more or 2 or more TIs in 24 hours is an indication for admission.

\textit{Table 39: ABCD\textsuperscript{2} score}\textsuperscript{22}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical features</th>
<th>Points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age is 60 years or older</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood pressure &gt;140/90 mmHg</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical features:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Unilateral weakness</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Speech disturbance without weakness</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• &gt;60 minutes</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 10–60 minutes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• &lt;10 minutes</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textit{ABCD\textsuperscript{2} score points (Total score 0–7)}

There is about 80% reduction in the risk of stroke after TIA with the early implementation of secondary stroke prevention strategies\textsuperscript{22}, these include:
• Anticoagulation of patients with atrial fibrillation
• Treatment with antiplatelet agent(s)
• Treatment with statins for most patients
• Management of hypertension
• Revascularisation of patients with symptomatic carotid artery stenosis
• Lifestyle modification

3. HEAD CT SCAN CONFIRMED HAEMORRHAGE
Intracerebral haemorrhage remains a significant cause of morbidity and mortality. It contributes to severe long-term disability. Treatment includes both medical and surgical options depending on the severity of the clinical state and availability of medical resources.

Medical treatment centres on:
• Reducing intracranial pressure
• Preventing haematoma expansion
• BP control
a. Raised intracranial pressure

Non-pharmacological management
- Elevate the head of the bed by 20-30°
- Hyperventilation for those on ventilatory support

Pharmacological management
- iv Mannitol 20% solution in a dose range of 0.2-2.0g/kg body weight every 6-8 hours over 48 hours; each dose should run over 15-30 minutes; (if Mannitol is not available or contraindicated such as impaired renal function, iv Furosemide is a good option)
- Use iv Furosemide 40mg 12 hourly, if patient is known to have CKD or renal impairment
- Oral Acetazolamide 250mg bd can be added if CT scan shows acute hydrocephalus or if there is a refractive oedema to any of the above medications
- Corticosteroids such as Dexamethasone do not have demonstrated efficacy in the treatment of cytotoxic oedema as seen in stroke; routine use of Dexamethasone should be avoided²₄

b. Haematoma expansion

Controlling BPs prevent haematoma expansion. For patients with primary or secondary problems with haemostasis or taking oral anti-coagulants such as Warfarin, replacement of vitamin K (iv vitamin K 10mg daily for 3 days) is recommended. There is an additional benefit in adding prothrombin to correct INR as it is superior to FFPs²⁵.

c. Hypertension

When BP is more than 180/110 mmHg, it can lead to re-bleed, haematoma expansion and worsening of the oedema. BP control should aim at maintaining the BP between 140/80 mmHg and 180/110 mmHg. Mean arterial pressure however should not drop more than 25% within 24 hours.
- iv antihypertensives such as continuous iv Labetalol infusion at 5-20mg per hour can be used in the acute control of BP above 180/110 mmHg; iv Hydralazine should be avoided as it causes rebound hypertension.

d. Statins

Early introduction of statins have significantly improved 30 day survival rate following bleeding events. Patients who received statins are more likely to be discharged home than those who did not²⁶.

e. Seizures

Monitor for seizures: if patient has a seizure give oral antiseizure medications (e.g. Carbamazepine 200mg daily or Levetiracetam 250mg daily).
- Refer all recurrent seizures in a day or seizures lasting more than 30 minutes to the next level of care

f. Anticoagulation and DVT prophylaxis

Prophylactic anticoagulation against venous thromboembolism can be initiated 48 hours after an acute bleed. There is also added benefit to the use of intermittent pneumatic compressions²⁷.

4. SUBARACHNOID HAEMORRHAGE (SAH)

SAH is a neurosurgical emergency. The emergency management of SAH should involve ABC of basic resuscitation. Patients who cannot maintain their airway should be immediately intubated. This includes patients who are in coma, in stupor from hydrocephalus and patients who need to be sedated on account of agitation. Until patient can have endovascular coiling or surgical clipping, medical management should be instituted to prevent complications of SAH.
General management include headache management, BP control, management of hydrocephalus, prevention of cerebral vasospasms and delayed cerebral infarct.

a. Headache
Use of opioids, e.g. **Morphine** (iv Morphine 4mg 6 hourly), is preferred. **Dexamethasone** (iv Dexamethasone 4mg 8 hourly) may also be used.

b. Blood pressure control
When BPs are above 160 mmHg systolic, iv antihypertensive, e.g. **Labetalol** should be used. Continuous iv infusion is preferred at 5-20mg per hour. iv **Hydralazine** should be avoided as it causes rebound hypertension.

c. Hydrocephalus
In the event of hydrocephalus, Tab **Acetazolamide** 250mg three times daily can be used. An external ventricular drainage (EVD), is also a surgical option even though there is increased risk of infection. In the case of communicating hydrocephalus however, lumbar drainage can be used in place of EVD. For prophylaxis against raised ICP, straining should be reduced with the use of stool softeners such as lactulose.

d. Delayed cerebral ischemia
Tab **Nimodipine** 60mg 4 hourly is used in the prevention of delayed cerebral ischemia. Duration of this treatment is on average 21 days. Adequate maintenance of normal blood volume with fluids is recommended. Prophylactic anticoagulation should be avoided. Pneumatic stocking compression can be used instead.

e. Hyponatremia
Hyponatremia is a known complication of SAH due to the syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion (SIADH), or cerebral salt wasting syndrome. Serum sodium should therefore be monitored and replaced appropriately.

f. Seizures
Use of antiepileptic medications is mainly limited to the period before surgical treatment of the aneurysm and is not needed after surgical treatment except in cases of ongoing seizures. **Levetiracetam** and **Carbamazepine** are preferred. **Phenytoin** is generally not recommended as it causes neurocognitive decline.

g. Prevention of rebleed
iv **Tranexamic acid**, 1g 8 hourly for 72 hours, can be used to avoid rebleeding pending endovascular or surgical intervention. Prolonged use however increases the risk of VTEs, strokes and MI.

➔ After stabilisation, all SAH patients should be referred for clipping or coiling.

NB: Coiling however is the preferred choice as it has a better outcome.
➔ Patients with SAH should be on admission for at least two weeks.
5.2.4 COMPLICATIONS OF STROKE

Medical complications following stroke are common and are associated with poor clinical outcomes, increased length of stay and higher rates of readmission, increased cost of care, delayed time to rehabilitation, and increased mortality\(^\text{29}\). While the majority of deaths that occur in the first week of stroke are attributable to ischaemic stroke, mortality beyond the first week is attributable to the complications of stroke\(^\text{30,31}\).

Early complications
- Malignant cerebral oedema
- Haemorrhagic transformation of ischaemic brain tissue
- Infections, eg aspiration pneumonia/lobar pneumonia and urinary tract infection (UTI)
- Venous thromboembolism
- Bed sores
- Seizures

Late complications
- Seizures/epilepsy
- Depression
- Falls

5.2.5 REFERRAL

Ideally all stroke cases should be referred to a Stroke Unit immediately for optimal care from a multidisciplinary team (MDT = the medical, neurosurgical, nursing, physiotherapy, clinical psychologist, occupational therapist, dietician, speech and language therapist).

➔ All stroke cases should be referred to a facility with a physician specialist. The physician specialist will have to follow the algorithm below to refer to a stroke unit.

![Figure 13: Stroke unit protocol for patient referral](Adapted from the Korle-Bu stroke unit protocol)
Discharge plan
Discharge plan should be initiated from day one of admission with the MDT.

Below is a table for the scoring system for ROSIER scale:

Table 40: The recognition of stroke in the emergency room (ROSIER) scale

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROSIER Scale</th>
<th>Stroke Assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The aim of this assessment tool is to enable medical and nursing staff to differentiate patients with stroke and stroke mimics.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Date</td>
<td>Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptom onset Date</td>
<td>Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GCS E = M = V = BP *Blood sugar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has there been loss of consciousness or syncope?</td>
<td>Y (-1) N (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has there been seizure activity?</td>
<td>Y (-1) N (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there a NEW ACUTE onset (or on awakening from sleep)?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. Asymmetric facial weakness</td>
<td>Y (+1) N (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Asymmetric arm weakness</td>
<td>Y (+1) N (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Asymmetric leg weakness</td>
<td>Y (+1) N (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Speech disturbance</td>
<td>Y (+1) N (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Visual field defect</td>
<td>Y (+1) N (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Total score _____ (-2 to +5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Provisional diagnosis: stroke Non-stroke (specify) __________________________ |
| *Stroke is likely if total scores are >0 |
| Scores of </= 0 have a low possibility of stroke but not completely excluded |

5.2.6 PATIENT EDUCATION AND PREVENTION
Some medical conditions and lifestyle choices can predispose anyone to stroke. Persons at risk must therefore be educated about their existing health conditions, the need for healthy lifestyle modification plans and to report for management when they feel unwell.

Refer to chapter 2 of these guidelines.

i. PREVENTION OF RECURRENT INFARCTIVE STROKE
About 80% of recurrent ischaemic strokes can be prevented using a combined approach of lifestyle and intensive medical therapy. However, only about 30% of patients who have ischaemic stroke receive all the appropriate recurrent stroke prevention measures.

In secondary prevention of stroke, the ABCDE approach can be adopted:
A. Antiplatelet/anticoagulation
B. Blood pressure control/blood glucose control
C. Cholesterol medication
D. Diet
E. Exercise and lifestyle modification
A  Antiplatelet/anticoagulation
In the general prevention of recurrent ischaemic stroke, it is recommended to maintain patients on antiplatelet medications. Three options are available when deciding on antiplatelet therapy:

- **Aspirin** 50-325mg daily (LOE A)
- **Aspirin** + extended release Dipyridamole* 25mg/200mg twice daily (LOE B)
- **Clopidogrel** 75mg daily (LOE B)

Aspirin plus extended release Dipyridamole* or Clopidogrel is a better secondary prevention option than Aspirin alone.\(^{35,36}\)

Long term Aspirin use with Clopidogrel is not recommended as it increases the risk of haemorrhage.\(^{37,38}\)

The choice of anti-platelets medications may however be dependent on:

- Patient preference
- Cost
- Comorbidities

For cardioembolic strokes such as atrial fibrillation, the use of anticoagulation is based on the risk stratification scores (e.g. CHA2DS2-VASc) and the bleeding risk scores (e.g. HASBLED).

→ Refer to chapter 5.9 on arrhythmia.

B  Blood pressure control

→ Refer to chapter 5.1 on hypertension.

B  Blood glucose control

→ Refer to appropriate guidelines.

C  Cholesterol medications

High intensity statin use is recommended in the prevention of recurrent ischaemic stroke. The two medications indicated are

- **Atorvastatin** 80mg daily\(^{43}\)
- **Rosuvastatin** 20-40mg daily\(^{44}\)

D  Diet control

→ Refer to chapter 2 of these guidelines.

E  Exercise and lifestyle modification

→ Refer to chapter 2 of these guidelines.
REFERENCES


27 Dennis M, Sandercock P, Graham C, Forbes J. The Clots in Legs or stockings after Stroke (CLOTS) 3 trial: A randomised controlled trial to determine whether or not intermittent pneumatic compression reduces the risk of post-stroke deep vein thrombosis and to estimate its cost-effectiveness. Health Technology Assessment. 2015; No. 19. 76.


5 DISEASES

5.3 CHEST PAIN, CORONARY ARTERY DISEASE AND MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACS</td>
<td>Acute Coronary Syndromes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASCVD</td>
<td>Atherosclerotic Cardiovascular Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CABG</td>
<td>Coronary Artery Bypass Graft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COPD</td>
<td>Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAD</td>
<td>Coronary Artery Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECG</td>
<td>Electrocardiogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBC</td>
<td>Full Blood Count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GERD</td>
<td>Gastro-Oesophageal Reflux Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IHD</td>
<td>Ischemic Heart Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOE</td>
<td>Level of Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI</td>
<td>Myocardial Infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSTEMI</td>
<td>Non-ST Elevation Myocardial Infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAD</td>
<td>Peripheral Artery Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCI</td>
<td>Percutaneous Coronary Intervention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STEMI</td>
<td>ST Elevation Myocardial Infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UA</td>
<td>Unstable Angina</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.3.1 INTRODUCTION

i. DEFINITION
Atherosclerosis of the coronary arteries leads to clinical conditions, which usually come with varying degrees of chest pain or symptoms equivalent to chest pain due to myocardial ischaemia, injury or infarction. Worldwide, atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (ASCVD) is a leading cause of morbidity and mortality. Coronary artery atherosclerosis results in plaque formation starting with fatty streaks and gradually leading to overt obstructive plaque. Thus, atherosclerosis of coronary arteries, also referred to as coronary artery disease (CAD), may lead to fixed obstruction of the coronary arteries or dynamic obstruction when there is plaque rupture or erosion resulting in thrombus formation and coronary vasospasm. Fixed severe obstructions usually result in myocardial ischaemia due to reduced blood supply, which if prolonged and severe gives rise to stable ischaemic heart disease. On the other hand, acute coronary vasospasm or dynamic obstructions would usually lead to myocardial injury and if prolonged and severe, results in myocardial infarction infarction or cell death.

ii. EPIDEMIOLOGY
There are many causes of imbalance between myocardial blood supply and demand, however, CAD is notably the most common. Many preventive and risk factor modifications are geared towards reducing the incidence of CAD. Worldwide, heart attacks accounted for 7.2 million deaths in 2005. Although data on CAD in Ghana is scanty, the consensus among many cardiologists and internists in Ghana is that the prevalence is increasing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathological changes in coronary arteries</th>
<th>Clinical presentation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fixed stenosis</td>
<td>Angina or stable angina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute or subacute thrombus formation/ spasms</td>
<td>Unstable angina (UA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Non-ST Elevation Myocardial Infarction (NSTEMI)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ST Elevation Myocardial Infarction (STEMI)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3.2 STABLE CORONARY ARTERY DISEASE

i. CLINICAL PRESENTATION
Stable CAD is characterized by angina pectoris, a clinical presentation of myocardial ischaemia brought on by exertion or stress and relieved by rest or Nitroglycerin. There is usually no cardiomyocyte necrosis. Myocardial ischaemia in patients with stable CAD is a result of a mismatch between blood supply and metabolic demand. Reduced blood supply to the heart will result in abnormal myocardial function including regional wall motion abnormalities, ST-T wave changes on the 12-lead ECG (electrocardiogram) and cardiac ischaemic pain (angina).

ii. SYMPTOMS
Angina pectoris – a sensation of “strangling in the chest”, is associated with chest pain:
- which is ‘squeezing’, ‘tight’ or ‘gripping’ or ‘choking’ in character (patient may place clenched fist over precordium to describe the pain – Levine’s sign)
- may radiate to the left arm, neck or jaw

Angina equivalent symptoms (cardiac symptoms other than chest pain)
- dyspnoea on exertion
- exertional nausea
- syncope
- palpitations
- mid-epigastric discomfort or sharp chest pain in women, diabetics and the elderly.
Table 42: Characteristics of angina versus other forms of chest pain

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Characteristics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Typical angina or definite angina</td>
<td>Must meet all three criteria below:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Substernal chest pain or discomfort with characteristic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>duration usually less than 10 minutes (2 to 5 minutes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Brought on by exertion or emotional stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Relieved by rest or Nitroglycerin(^*/)Glyceryl trinitrate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atypical angina or probable angina</td>
<td>Meets 2 of the above characteristics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-anginal chest pain</td>
<td>Meets 1 or none of the typical anginal characteristics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ii.a. FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION OF ANGINA

The severity of angina is based on the severity of chest pain due to the myocardial ischaemia. One way of documenting the severity of angina is by using the functional classification of angina by the Canadian Cardiovascular Society.

Table 43: Functional classification of angina (Adapted from Canadian Cardiovascular Society\(^6\))

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functional Class</th>
<th>Description of levels of activity that bring on chest pain/angina</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class I</td>
<td>Ordinary activity such as walking or climbing stairs does not cause angina; angina occurs with strenuous, rapid or prolonged exertion at work or recreation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class II</td>
<td>Slight limitation of ordinary activity; angina occurs on walking or climbing stairs rapidly, walking or stair climbing after meals, in cold wind or under emotional stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class III</td>
<td>Marked limitation of ordinary physical activity; walking one or two blocks (e.g. walking 50-300 metres on the flat on the level and climbing one flight of stairs in normal conditions and at normal pace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class IV</td>
<td>Inability to carry on any physical activity without discomfort, anginal syndrome may be present at rest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ii.b. PRE-TEST RISK ASSESSMENT OF PATIENTS PRESENTING WITH CHEST PAIN

There are three variables important in predicting risk of presence of CAD in a patient presenting with symptoms of chest pain/angina, angina or angina equivalents:

1. Age: The older the patient, the more likely the patient has significant coronary artery disease
2. Type of Pain: Typical angina presentation is more likely to be due to CAD. Non anginal chest pain, fleeting chest pain, pins and needles are less likely due to CAD
3. Gender: Males are more likely to have coronary artery disease compared to females below menopausal age

Table 44 below should be used to assess a patient’s pretest probability of having coronary artery disease should they present with chest pain\(^7\).

Table 44: CAD pretest probabilities (%) in patients with stable chest pain symptoms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Typical angina</th>
<th>Atypical angina</th>
<th>Non-anginal pain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Men</td>
<td>Women</td>
<td>Men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30–39</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40–49</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50–59</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60–69</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70–79</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;80</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(>85%) - Very high-risk patients  (66–85%) - High-risk patients  (15–65%) - Medium-risk patients
COMMON CAUSES OF CHEST PAIN

Chest pain can have several causes. As opposed to chronic recurrent chest pain, all patients with new onset chest pain should be evaluated under the differential diagnosis of myocardial infarction/heart attack as discussed below.

Table 45: Mimics of angina/other causes of chest pain

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causes of chest pain</th>
<th>Features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Angina                       | • Substernal chest pain or discomfort with characteristic duration usually less than 10 minutes (2 to 5 minutes)  
|                              | • Brought on by exertion or emotional stress                              
|                              | • Relieved by rest or Nitroglycerin*/Glyceryl trinitrate                 |
| GERD (Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease) | • Symptoms worse at night, early morning, may have chronic nocturnal cough  
|                              | • Symptoms usually abate with avoidance of certain foods and late eating |
| Cholelithiasis               | Worse after eating, especially fatty food                                 |
| Peptic ulcer disease         | May be worse with hunger and relieved with antacids                       |
| Musculoskeletal              | Worse with movement and reproducible with palpation                       |
| Radiculopathy/cervical spondylosis | Associated with numbness, neuropathic pain and neck pain                 |
| Herpes zoster                | Very painful superficial blisters along dermatome; may not have rash    |
| Psychiatric                  | Usually there is a precipitant and exaggerated description of detailed symptoms |
| Mild chronic heart failure   | Patients may have exertional dyspnea due to heart failure and may present as angina equivalent; usually, they will have leg swelling and nocturnal symptoms of congestion |
| Pneumonia                    | Associated with pleurisy, cough and fever                                 |

Signs

- Most patients may have no signs
- Diaphoresis (excessive sweating)
- Pulse rate may be increased or decreased
- Blood pressure may be increased or decreased
- Skin signs of hyperlipidaemia such as the presence of xanthelasma may be a pointer to atherosclerosis

5.3.3 MANAGEMENT OF STABLE CAD

Treatment Objectives

- Relieve chest pain and any other symptoms
- Improve quality of life
- Prevent complications of CAD such as acute myocardial infarction or heart failure
- Identify and manage modifiable risk factors
- Prevent cardiovascular related death

Strategies for Achieving Treatment Objectives

- Educate patients about the aetiology, clinical manifestations, treatment options and prognosis of ischaemic heart disease (IHD); encourage active participation of patients in their treatment decisions
- Identify and treat conditions that contribute to, worsen, or complicate IHD
- Effectively modify risk factors for IHD by both pharmacological and nonpharmacological methods
- Use evidence-based pharmacological treatments to improve patients’ health status and survival, with attention to avoiding drug interactions and side effects
ii. MANAGEMENT ACCORDING TO LEVEL OF CARE\textsuperscript{10,4}

iiia. HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR

NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Blood Pressure

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Full blood cell count
- Oxygen saturation
- Blood sugar

NON-PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
\rightarrow Educate the patient by the patient education/information guide below.

Healthy lifestyle modifications:
- Weight control - maintenance of a BMI of 18.5 to 24.9 kg/m\(^2\), maintenance of a waist circumference less than 102 cm (40 inches) in men and less than 88 cm (35 inches) in women
- Lipid management
- Ensure compliance with BP control
- Smoking cessation and avoidance of exposure to second-hand smoke

\rightarrow Refer patient to a health facility with a doctor.
iib. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR

NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Blood pressure
- ECG
- Chest X-ray

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Full blood cell count
- Oxygen saturation
- Blood sugar
- Lipid profile
- BUE/creatinine

NON-PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
➔ Educate the patient by the patient education/information guide below.

Healthy lifestyle modifications:
- Weight control - maintenance of a BMI of 18.5 to 24.9 kg/m², maintenance of a waist circumference less than 102 cm (40 inches) in men and less than 88 cm (35 inches) in women (less for certain racial groups)
- Lipid management
- BP control: ensure compliance with BP control
- Smoking cessation and avoidance of exposure to second-hand smoke

Risk factor management (LOE A)
Identify and manage risk factors such as hypertension, diabetes and hyperlipidaemias
- Optimise or initiate treatment for hypertension (refer to chapter 5.1 of these guidelines)
- Optimise or initiate treatment for diabetes mellitus
- Optimise cholesterol treatment (refer to chapter 2 of these guidelines)
- Identify heart failure (refer to chapter 5.4 of these guidelines)

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT

ANTI-ANGINAL THERAPY (LOE A)
- Glyceryl trinitrate, sublingual 500mg then as required for the relief of chest pain; instruct patient to report if pain is not resolving
  and
- Bisoprolol, oral 2.5-10mg daily depending on BP and response
  or
- Carvedilol, oral 3.125-25mg 12 hourly depending on BP and response
  or
- Metoprolol, oral 50-100mg 8-12 hourly depending on BP and response
  or
- Metoprolol XL, oral 25-50mg daily
or
- Atenolol, oral 50-100mg daily depending on BP and response
  or
- Propranolol, oral 20-80mg 12 hourly depending on BP and response

→ NOTE: Avoid Beta-blockers in bronchial asthma, bradycardia and hypotension; avoid Atenolol in heart failure.

If patient is asthmatic or requires further antianginal medication, consider Verapamil and Diltiazem* (LOE A)
- Diltiazem*, oral 60-120mg 12 hourly or extended release preparations.
  or
- Verapamil, oral 80mg to 160mg 8hrly or extended release preparations.
  or
- Amlodipine, oral 5-10mg daily
  or
- Nifedipine XL, oral 30-60mg daily
  or
- Nifedipine, oral 10-40mg 12 hourly
  or
- Felodipine*, oral 5-10mg daily

  → Avoid in bradycardia, hypotension and in patients with heart failure; for Verapamil and Diltiazem*, avoid if patient is already on Beta-blockers.

ANTIPLATELET THERAPY (LOE A)
- Aspirin, oral 75mg daily
  or
- Clopidogrel, oral 75mg daily if allergic to Aspirin or GI intolerance

  → Dual antiplatelet is not indicated unless high risk patient (new onset, severe angina).

If further antianginal therapy is needed, or if Beta-blockers or Verapamil are contraindicated, then use:
- Isosorbide Dinitrate, oral 10mg 8-12 hourly
  or
- Isosorbide Mononitrate, oral 30-120mg daily

  → Patients on Sildenafil or other phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitors should not be placed on nitrates.
  - Consider: Trimetazidine*, oral 35mg 8hrly
    or
  - Consider: Ranolazine*, oral 500mg 12hrly

  → Refer patient to a health facility with a physician specialist, if there is no significant improvement in symptoms after the initial treatment above or the patient has worsening signs.
ii(c). HEALTH FACILITY WITH A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST/FAMILY PHYSICIAN

NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Blood pressure
- ECG
- Stress ECG
- Echocardiography
- Chest X-ray

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Full blood count
- Oxygen saturation
- Blood sugar
- Lipid profile
- BUE/creatinine

NON-PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT

➔ Educate the patient by the patient education/information guide below.

Healthy lifestyle modifications:
- Weight control - maintenance of a BMI of 18.5 to 24.9 kg/m², maintenance of a waist circumference less than 102 cm (40 inches) in men and less than 88 cm (35 inches) in women
- Lipid management
- BP control: Ensure compliance
- Smoking cessation and avoidance of exposure to second-hand smoke

Risk factor management (LOE A)
Identify and manage risk factors such as hypertension, diabetes and hyperlipidaemias.
- Optimise or initiate treatment for hypertension (refer to chapter 5.1 of these guidelines)
- Optimise or initiate treatment for diabetes mellitus
- Optimize cholesterol treatment (refer to chapter 2 of these guidelines)
- Identify heart failure (refer to chapter 5.4 of these guidelines)

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT

ANTI-ANGINAL THERAPY (LOE A)
- Glyceryl trinitrate, sublingual 500micrograms, then as required for the relief of chest pain; instruct patient to report if pain is not resolving
  and
- Bisoprolol, oral 2.5-10mg daily depending on BP and response
  or
- Carvedilol, oral 3.125-25mg 12 hourly depending on BP and response
  or
- Metoprolol, oral 50-100mg 8-12 hourly depending on BP and response
  or
- Metoprolol XL, oral 25-50mg daily
or

- Atenolol, oral 50-100mg daily depending on BP and response
- Propranolol, oral 20-80mg BD depending on BP and response

→ NOTE: Avoid Beta-blockers in bronchial asthma, bradycardia and hypotension; avoid Atenolol in heart failure.

If patient is asthmatic or requires further antianginal medications consider Verapamil and Diltiazem* (LOE A)

- Diltiazem*, oral 60-120mg 12 hrly or extended release preparations
- Verapamil, oral 80-160mg 8 hrly or extended release preparations
- Amlodipine, oral 5-10mg daily
- Nifedipine XL, oral 30-60mg daily
- Nifedipine, oral 10-40mg 12hourly
- Felodipine*, oral 5-10mg daily

→ Avoid in bradycardia, hypotension and in patients with heart failure; for Verapamil and Diltiazem*, avoid if patient is already on Beta-blockers.

ANTIPLATELET THERAPY (LOE A)

- Aspirin, oral, 75mg daily
- Clopidogrel, oral 75mg daily if allergic to Aspirin or GI intolerance

→ Dual antiplatelet is not indicated except high risk patient (new onset, severe angina).

If further antianginal therapy needed or if beta-blockers or Verapamil are contraindicated:

- Isosorbide Dinitrate, oral 10mg 8-12 hourly
- Isosorbide Mononitrate, oral 30-120mg daily

→ Patients on Sildenafil or other phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitors should not be placed on nitrates.
- Consider: Trimetazidine*, oral 35mg 8hourly
- Consider: Ranolazine*, oral 500mg 12hourly

→ Refer patient to a specialised centre or a cardiologist, if there is no significant improvement in symptoms after the initial treatment above or the patient has worsening signs.

→ After initial stabilization, patient should be referred to cardiologist for further investigation and management. Thereafter, patient should be referred back to primary physician for continuation of care.
5.3.4 PATIENT EDUCATION/INFORMATION
- The importance of medication adherence for managing symptoms and retarding disease progression
- How to recognize worsening cardiovascular symptoms and the need to rush to a medical facility once such symptoms occur
- How to recognise worsening cardiovascular symptoms
- Adherence to a diet that is low in saturated fat, cholesterol, and trans-fat; high in fresh fruits, whole grains, and vegetables
- Importance of healthy lifestyle modification

5.3.5. PREVENTION OF STABLE CAD
Stable CAD is prevented by the modification of its risk factors (refer to chapter 2 of these guidelines).

5.3.6 ACUTE CORONARY SYNDROMES (ACS)

i. INTRODUCTION
Acute coronary syndromes (ACS) are caused by acute to subacute lack of myocardial blood supply and/or increased myocardial demand leading to cardiomyocyte injury and necrosis. There are three clinical entities making up the acute coronary syndromes based on the pathophysiology and electrocardiographic (ECG) features at presentation\(^2\). The three types of ACS include:
- Unstable Angina (UA)
- Non-ST Segment Elevation Myocardial Infarction (NSTEMI)
- ST Segment Elevation Myocardial Infarction (STEMI)

ECG changes during severe myocardial ischaemia and/or injury is used as an initial screening and diagnostic tool for all patients presenting with acute to subacute chest pain. Unlike the pain of of stable angina (fixed chronic stenosis), acute coronary syndromes usually present acutely with severe chest pain, which may wax and
wane depending on the severity of coronary occlusion. Aside from electrocardiography, cardiac biomarkers are also used to further distinguish between unstable angina and NSTEMI as seen in figure 15.

ii. AETIOLOGY
The leading cause of ACS is CAD. However, there are other less prevalent causes, which need to be mentioned. The table below shows the aetiology and possible mechanisms of ACS.

Table 46: Causes of acute coronary syndrome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aetiology of ACS</th>
<th>Mechanism</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coronary artery disease</td>
<td>Plaque rupture resulting in sub-totally occlusive thrombus on pre-existing plaque and distal microvascular throomboembolism from plaque-associated thrombus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plaque Erosion resulting in sub-totally occlusive thrombus on pre-existing plaque and distal microvascular throomboembolism from plaque-associated thrombus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Progressive mechanical obstruction to coronary flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coronary spasm or vasoconstriction</td>
<td>Dynamic obstruction of epicardial and/or microvascular obstruction to coronary flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coronary artery dissection</td>
<td>Arteritis and thrombus formation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thromboembolism from plaque erosion</td>
<td>Plaque-associated coronary throomboembolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary unstable angina</td>
<td>Anaemia, hyperthyroidism</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Platelet aggregation and recruitment is key to propagation of the thrombus. The sequelae of coronary artery occlusion, irrespective of the cause depends on the territory supplied by the vessel, the presence or absence of collaterals (new vessel formation due to the chronic ischaemia), duration of the occlusion as well as the metabolic state of the at-risk myocardium, i.e. the adaptation of the myocardial cells to chronic ischaemia prior to the acute or subacute occlusion.

iii. SYMPTOMS
Chest pain/discomfort - the description of this pain/discomfort may be vague. Usually, it is a left substernal pain but can be from any part of the chest; the pain may or may not radiate to the jaw and arm. In STEMI and NSTEMI, the pain is usually associated with other features such as shortness of breath, syncope/pre-syncope nausea, vomiting, palpitations, diaphoresis and anxiety.
Atypical presentations (with absence of chest pain):
- Shortness of breath
- Excessive belching
- Nausea
- Vomiting
- Epigastric discomfort
- Easy fatigability
- Loss of consciousness
- Cardiac arrest
- Delirium or confusion

→ NOTE: These atypical symptoms are common among diabetics, women, the elderly and patients with deformed chest wall and patients with COPD.

iv. DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSES OF ACS
As opposed to stable CAD, ACS patients should not be evaluated based on the triad of gender, age and type of chest pain. All patients presenting with acute chest pain should be presumed to be experiencing one form of ACS or another until proven otherwise. The OPQRST is a mnemonic used to help differentiate the aetiology of acute chest pain.

Table 47: How to use the mnemonic "OPQRST"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Historical aspects of chest pain: The OPQRST approach</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Onset</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Provocation &amp; Palliation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Quality</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Region &amp; Radiation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Severity</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Timing</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 48: Clinical characteristics of acute coronary syndrome compared with other causes of acute chest pain using the mnemonic "OPQRST"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chest pain Aetiology</th>
<th>O Onset</th>
<th>P Provocation and Palliation</th>
<th>Q Quality</th>
<th>R Region and Radiation</th>
<th>S Severity</th>
<th>T Timing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acute coronary syndrome</td>
<td>Rapid over a few minutes, escalating or recurring</td>
<td>Usually spontaneous; not relieved by rest or nitrates</td>
<td>Crushing, tight, heavy or band-like</td>
<td>Central anterior chest; radiates to throat, jaw, arms or no radiation</td>
<td>Usually severe</td>
<td>Minutes to few hours, may resolve after completion of infarct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thoracic aortic dissection</td>
<td>Sudden, severe</td>
<td>Maybe worse with straining</td>
<td>Tearing, sharp, lancinating</td>
<td>Central; radiates to the back</td>
<td>Severe</td>
<td>Minutes to hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tension Pneumothorax</td>
<td>Sudden, severe</td>
<td>Relieved by sitting still and breath holding or hypopnoea</td>
<td>Lancinating, tearing, sharp</td>
<td>Unilateral on the side of the pneumothorax</td>
<td>Severe</td>
<td>Minutes to few hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary Embolism</td>
<td>Sudden or gradual</td>
<td>Pleuritic, if pulmonary infarction</td>
<td>Pleuritic, if pulmonary infarction</td>
<td>Unilateral on the side of the PE</td>
<td>Dull ache or sharp pleuritic</td>
<td>Hours to days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute Pericarditis with/without effusion</td>
<td>Gradual onset may follow a febrile illness</td>
<td>Worse lying supine; better sitting forward</td>
<td>Sharp, &quot;pleuritic-like&quot;*</td>
<td>Central anterior; usually no radiation</td>
<td>Severe</td>
<td>Hours to days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musculoskeletal pain eg: intercostal muscle spasm</td>
<td>Sudden (e.g. intercostal muscle spasm) or gradual (e.g. costochondritis)</td>
<td>Worse with movement or activity involving the muscle group or joint, reproducible by palpation; relieved by restriction of movement</td>
<td>Sharp, restricting or dull</td>
<td>Anywhere on chest wall; radiates to arms, around the chest to the back</td>
<td>Variable intensity: mild to severe</td>
<td>Hours to days, usually chronic, recurrent and reproducible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruptured/perforated Oesophagus</td>
<td>Sudden, following retching and or vomiting</td>
<td>Worse with swallowing</td>
<td>Sharp, tearing</td>
<td>Central</td>
<td>Severe</td>
<td>Minutes to hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oesophageal spasm</td>
<td>Sudden, recurrent</td>
<td>Lying flat may provoke pain; sometimes relieved by nitrates but not by rest</td>
<td>Burning, gripping</td>
<td>Central anterior or epigastric; radiates often to the back</td>
<td>Usually mild but can mimic MI</td>
<td>Night-time common, variable duration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

v. MANAGEMENT

Patients with myocardial infarct (MI) may present with cardiac arrest (fast ventricular tachycardia or ventricular fibrillation). In such cases, refer to chapter 4 Cardiac arrest for management (see page 46).

Figure 16 (next page) is a pathway for decision making based on the symptoms and availability of ECG.

➔ All facilities without ECG should immediately refer any patient with acute chest pain.
TREATMENT OBJECTIVES

- Relief of pain, shortness of breath and anxiety
- Prevent myocardial cell death
- Prevent complications
- Improve prognosis

The above are achieved using the following 5 modalities of treatment depending on the level of care:

- Anti-ischaemic therapy (e.g.; oxygen, nitrates, Beta-blockers)
- Anti-platelet therapy (e.g.; Aspirin, Clopidogrel, Ticagrelor*)
- Anti-coagulation therapy (e.g.; Heparin, Enoxaparin)
- Disease modification therapy (e.g.; statins, ACEi)
- Revascularisation (reserved for specialized centres, depending on capacity of trained cardiologists)
vi. MANAGEMENT ACCORDING TO LEVEL OF CARE

via. HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR

NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Blood pressure
- ECG, if available

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Full blood cell count
- Blood sugar
- Oxygen saturation
- Sickling test

PHARMACOLOGIC TREATMENT
Aspirin, oral 300mg stat (LOE A)

→ Refer immediately to the nearest hospital with a doctor or to a physician specialist (if immediately accessible).

vib. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR/PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST

NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- 12-lead ECG
- Blood pressure in both arms
- Chest Xray
- Oxygen saturation

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Blood sugar
- Cardiac biomarkers (Troponin/CKMB)
- Blood lipid profile
- BUE/creatinine

PHARMACOLOGICAL THERAPY

ANTI-ISCHAEMIA (LOE A)
- Give oxygen if oxygen saturation is < 95%
- Glyceryl trinitrate, sublingual 500mg then as required for the relief of chest pain; instruct patient to report if pain is not resolving
→ NOTE: Avoid nitrates if hypotensive or inferior wall infarct or if phosphodiesterase inhibitor has been used by the patient in the last three days.

Add any Beta-blocker below:
→ NOTE: Beta-blockers should be avoided in bronchial asthma, bradycardia and hypotension; avoid Beta-blockers in patients with fulminant heart failure.
- Bisoprolol, oral 2.5-10mg daily depending on BP and response
or
- **Carvedilol**, oral 3.125-25mg 12 hourly depending on BP and response
  or
- **Metoprolol**, oral 25-100mg 8-12 hourly depending on BP and response
  or
- **Metoprolol XL**, oral 25-200mg daily
  or
- **Atenolol**, oral 50-100mg daily depending on BP and response
  or
- **Propranolol**, oral 20-80mg 12 hourly depending on BP and response (LOE A)

If patient is asthmatic or requires further antianginal medications consider **Verapamil** and **Diltiazem**:
- **Diltiazem**, oral 60-120mg 12 hourly or extended release preparations
  or
- **Verapamil**, oral 80-160mg 8 hourly or extended release preparations

→ Avoid in bradycardia, hypotension and in patients already on Beta-blockers.

**ANTIPLATELET (LOE A)**
- **Aspirin**, oral 300mg stat then 75mg daily
  and
- **Clopidogrel**, oral 600mg stat then 75mg daily
  or
- **Ticagrelor**, oral 180mg stat then 90mg BD

**ANTICOAGULATION (LOE A)**
- **Heparin** 4,500 to 5,000 units iv bolus or 60-80 units per kg iv bolus followed by 18 units per kg per hour infusion for 72 hours

**CONTINUATION OF CARE**
- Optimise or initiate treatment for hypertension (refer to chapter 5.1 of these guidelines)
- Optimise or initiate treatment for diabetes mellitus per appropriate guideline
- Optimise cholesterol treatment (refer to chapter 2 of these guidelines)
- Identify heart failure early and manage (refer to chapter 5.4 of these guidelines)
- Maximize optimal medical therapy before stress testing in patients with unstable angina

→ Refer patient to a cardiologist if there is no significant improvement in symptoms after the initial treatment above or the patient has worsening signs.
vic. SPECIALISED CENTRE WITH A CARDIOLOGIST

NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- 12-lead ECG
- Blood pressure in both arms
- Chest X-ray
- Stress test in the case of unstable angina
- Coronary angiography
- Fractional flow reserve
- Intravascular ultrasound

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Blood sugar
- Cardiac biomarkers (Troponin/CKMB)
- Blood lipid profile
- BUE/creatinine

PHARMACOLOGICAL AND INVASIVE TREATMENT (LOE A)
Confirm diagnosis: Ensure guideline medical therapy/optimal medical therapy with adequate doses.
Consider emergent revascularisation:
- Fibrinolytic therapy (maximum benefit obtained when given within 3 hours after onset of chest pain but can be given up to 6 hours after onset)
- Coronary angioplasty with or without stenting for obstructive CAD with moderate to severe symptoms or ischaemia while on optimal medical therapy

➔ If patient cannot afford any of these therapies, maximise medical therapy.
➔ Always call for a second opinion when in doubt or refer.

REVASCULARIZATION IN ACS
A critical step in the management of patient with high-risk unstable angina, Non-STEMI and STEMI is revascularisation. Revascularisation is reserved for facilities with trained interventional cardiologist.
The flow diagram extracted from ESC guidelines gives a step-by-step approach to managing patients with acute coronary syndrome (unstable angina and NSTEMI). Due to accessibility and socioeconomic factors, intensification of medical therapy is recommended for all patients. And only those capable should be offered an invasive strategy.
ST ELEVATION MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION (STEMI)

All patients with STEMI are eligible for reperfusion therapy and should be transferred immediately to the next level of care preferably to the chest pain centres of excellence with experienced cardiologist and/or interventional cardiologist to be evaluated for revascularisation using fibrinolytic therapy or percutaneous coronary angioplasty and stent placement.

Patients for fibrinolytic therapy should be carefully evaluated and contraindications cross-checked and documented.

Table 49: Contraindications to fibrinolytic therapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contraindications to fibrinolytic therapy</th>
<th>Relative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Absolute</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous intracranial haemorrhage or stroke or stroke of unknown origin</td>
<td>Transient ischaemic attack in the preceding 6 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ischaemic stroke in preceding 6 months</td>
<td>Oral anticoagulant therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central nervous system damage or neoplasms or arteriovenous malformation</td>
<td>Pregnancy or within 1 week postpartum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recent major trauma/surgery/head injury (within the preceding month)</td>
<td>Refractory hypertension (SBP &gt;180 mmHg and/or DBP &gt;110 mmHg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal bleeding within the past month</td>
<td>Advanced liver disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Known bleeding disorder (excluding menses)</td>
<td>Infective endocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aortic dissection</td>
<td>Active peptic ulcer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-compressible punctures in the past 24 hours (e.g. liver biopsy, lumbar puncture)</td>
<td>Prolonged or traumatic resuscitation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The decision to either have the patient undergo reperfusion therapy using primary percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) depends on the time of presentation and availability of either therapies. Fibrinolytic therapy is given an equal rating to PCI in Ghana. PCI may be performed hours after the onset of chest pain. It is recommended that patients be referred to see an interventional cardiologist for discussions on whether to pursue an invasive strategy for risk stratification and opening of the affected vessel.

### Table 50: Commonly used fibrinolytics and their doses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Initial treatment doses</th>
<th>Specific contraindication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Streptokinase*</td>
<td>1.5 million units over 30–60 minutes IV</td>
<td>Previous treatment with Streptokinase or Anistreplase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alteplase* (tPA)</td>
<td>15mg bolus IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.75mg/kg IV over 30 minutes (maximum 50mg)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>then 0.5mg/kg IV over 60 minutes (up to 35mg)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reteplase* (rPA)</td>
<td>10 units IV bolus followed by 10 units IV bolus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30 minutes apart</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenecteplase* (TNK-tPA)</td>
<td>Single iv bolus based on body weight:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If &lt; 60 kg give 30mg (6000 units)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If 60 to 70 kg, give 35mg (7000 units)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If 70 to &lt;80 kg, give 40mg (8000 units)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If 80 to &lt;90 kg, give 45mg (9000 units)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If &gt;90 kg, give 50mg (10000 units)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It is recommended to reduce to half-dose in patients &gt;75 years of age</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Consult an interventional cardiologist before therapy for possible rescue PCI.

The decision to either have the patient undergo reperfusion therapy using primary percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) depends on the time of presentation and availability of either therapies. Fibrinolytic therapy is given an equal rating to primary PCI in Ghana. PCI may be performed hours after the onset of chest pain. It is recommended that patients be referred to see an interventional cardiologist for discussions on whether to pursue an invasive strategy for risk stratification and opening of the affected vessel.

### Figure 18: Reperfusion strategies in the infarct-related artery according to time from symptoms onset

PCI = percutaneous coronary intervention; STEMI = ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction

---

**Primary PCI**

- **Fibrinolysis** (only if PCI cannot be performed within 120 min from STEMI diagnosis)

0 Early phase of STEMI

3 hours

**Primary PCI**

- (symptoms, hemodynamic instability, or arrhythmias)

**Primary PCI**

- (asymptomatic stable patients)

1a B

12 hours Evolved STEMI

48 hours Recent STEMI

**Routine PCI**

- (asymptomatic stable patients)

III A
REFERENCES

5 DISEASES

5.4 HEART FAILURE

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACC</th>
<th>American College of Cardiology</th>
<th>HfrEF</th>
<th>Heart failure with reduced ejection fraction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AF</td>
<td>Atrial fibrillation</td>
<td>LOE</td>
<td>Level of evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AHA</td>
<td>American Heart Association</td>
<td>LVEF</td>
<td>Left ventricular ejection fraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBC</td>
<td>Full blood count</td>
<td>NYHA</td>
<td>New York Heart Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBS</td>
<td>Fasting blood sugar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HF</td>
<td>Heart failure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HfpEF</td>
<td>Heart failure with preserved ejection fraction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.4.1 INTRODUCTION

i. DEFINITION
Heart failure (HF) is a clinical syndrome characterized by abnormal function of the heart leading to dyspnoea and oedema. The abnormal function of the heart may be due to structural or functional impairment of ventricular filling or ejection/pumping of blood. This leads to inadequate cardiac output to meet the requirements of tissue metabolism.
Clinical diagnosis of HF can be generally classified based on whether it is associated with a reduced left ventricular ejection fraction (LVEF) below 50% heart failure with reduced ejection fraction (HFrEF) or preserved LVEF of 50% or more heart failure with preserved ejection fraction (HFpEF).

ii. EPIDEMIOLOGY
HF has a prevalence rate of 1–2% of the adult population is reported, rising to ≥10% among people ≥70 years of age in most developed countries².
The lifetime risk of HF at age 55 years is 33% for men and 28% for women. The proportion of patients with HFpEF ranges from 22% to 73%, depending on the definition applied. Compared with HFrEF, patients with HFpEF are older, more often women and more commonly have a history of hypertension and atrial fibrillation (AF), while a history of myocardial infarction is less common¹.
In sub-saharan Africa, unlike in high-income countries, HF is predominantly caused by hypertension, dilated cardiomyopathies and rheumatic heart disease (a form of heart valve disease)⁴. Right heart failure due to pulmonary hypertension secondary to non-smoking related chronic lung disease and HIV-related disease remain other significant causes of heart failure in the region⁵. HF has a prognosis worse than most cancers with a 5-year mortality up to 50%³.

iii. CLASSIFICATION OF HEART FAILURE
The NYHA classification is based on the individual’s functional limitation (dyspnoea) due to the heart failure. The ACC/AHA staging of HF is based on pathological changes causing heart failure. This ranges from risk factors of HF to structural abnormalities of the heart and its limitations.

iiia. NEW YORK HEART ASSOCIATION (NYHA) CLASSIFICATION OF HF⁴
- Class I: No symptoms and no limitation of ordinary physical activity
- Class II: No symptoms at rest but slight limitation of ordinary activity
- Class III: No symptoms at rest but marked limitation of ordinary physical activity (activity of daily living)
- Class IV: Symptoms at rest and worse during any physical activity

iiib. THE AMERICAN COLLEGE OF CARDIOLOGY/AMERICAN HEART ASSOCIATION (ACC/AHA) STAGING SYSTEM IN HF⁵
- Stage A: High risk of heart failure but no structural heart disease or symptoms of heart failure
- Stage B: Structural heart disease but no symptoms of HF
- Stage C: Structural heart disease and symptoms of HF
- Stage D: Refractory heart failure requiring specialized therapy
5.4.2 AETIOLOGY

Causes of heart failure include:

- Hypertension (most common cause in Sub-Saharan Africa)
- Valvular heart disease; especially rheumatic heart disease
- Dilated cardiomyopathy; usually non-ischaemic
- Arrhythmias; most commonly atrial fibrillation
- Peripartum cardiomyopathy
- Ischaemic heart disease commonly due to CAD
- Pericardial disease
- Endomyocardial fibrosis
- Infective endocarditis
- Congenital heart disease
- Cor pulmonale (right HF due to lung disease)

5.4.3 CLINICAL PRESENTATION

i. SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

Table 51: Symptoms and signs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptoms and signs of heart failure</th>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>Signs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Typical</td>
<td>Breathlessness</td>
<td>Elevated jugular venous pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Orthopnoea</td>
<td>Hepatogenous reflux</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea</td>
<td>Third heart sound with or without gallop rhythm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fatigue</td>
<td>Laterally displaced apical impulse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced exercise tolerance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atypical</td>
<td>Nocturnal cough</td>
<td>Cardiac murmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wheezing</td>
<td>Peripheral oedema (ankle, sacral, scrotal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bloating feeling</td>
<td>Pulmonary crepitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Loss of appetite</td>
<td>Reduced air entry and dullness to percussion at lung bases (pleural effusion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Confusion (usually in the elderly)</td>
<td>Tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Palpitations</td>
<td>Irregular pulse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Syncope</td>
<td>Tachypnoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bendopnea (shortness of breath when bending forward)</td>
<td>Cheyne-Stokes respiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hepatomegaly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ascites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cold extremities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Narrow pulse pressure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.4 ASPECTS OF MANAGEMENT RELEVANT FOR ALL LEVELS OF CARE

The diagnosis of heart failure with reduced ejection fraction requires 3 conditions to be satisfied:

- Typical symptoms of HF
- Typical signs of HF
- LVEF below 50% on Echocardiogram
The diagnosis of heart failure with preserved ejection fraction requires 4 conditions to be satisfied:
- Typical symptoms of HF
- Typical signs of HF
- LVEF 50% on Echocardiogram
- Presence of structural heart disease and/or diastolic dysfunction

i. NON-PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT RELEVANT FOR ALL LEVELS
- Diet and nutrition
- Decrease salt intake
- Smoking cessation
- Avoidance of alcohol
- Fluid intake
  - Fluid restriction in severe HF to not more than 1500mls/day carried out in accordance with daily weighing
  - Supervised exercise training based on the patient’s exercise tolerance level

5.4.5 MANAGEMENT ACCORDING TO LEVEL OF CARE
Acute heart failure (AHF) develops when there is rapid onset or deterioration of typical symptoms and/or signs of HF leading to hospital admission. When an AHF occurs for the first time, it is described as a ‘de novo’ AHF. More commonly, AHF develops as a consequence of acute decompensation of chronic HF.

i. HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR

ia. ACUTE HEART FAILURE

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Full blood cell count
- Fasting blood sugar

NON-PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
In acute situation:
- Admit patient and prop up in bed
- Give oxygen in case of hypoxaemia (SPO2 <90%) (oxygen should not be given routinely in the absence of hypoxaemia)
- Give oxygen from 4-10l per minute until SPO2 >92% in a propped-up position

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
Diuretics:
- Furosemide 40-80mg 8-12 hourly iv

➔ Refer patient to a health facility with a doctor.

ib. CHRONIC HEART FAILURE

➔ Refer patient to a health facility with a doctor.

ic. ATRIAL FIBRILLATION

➔ Refer to a health facility with a physician specialist.
ii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR

ii.a. ACUTE HEART FAILURE

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

- Full blood cell count
- Fasting blood sugar
- BUE/Creatinine

OTHER INVESTIGATION

- Chest x-ray
  - Possible findings: upper lobe venous blood diversion, pulmonary oedema or Kerley B lines, cardio-megaly-CTR (cardio-thoracic ratio) of > 0.5, pleural effusions; usually right sided
  - Chest X-ray may also rule out differential diagnoses such as pneumonia, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease or pulmonary tuberculosis

- Electrocardiography (ECG)
  - Possible findings: sinus tachycardia, sinus bradycardia, atrioventricular blocks, a bundle branch block pattern, atrial fibrillation, left ventricular hypertrophy, atrial abnormality, right ventricular hypertrophy, among others

NON-PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT

- Patient should be propped up in bed
- Give oxygen in case of hypoxaemia (SPO2 <90%) (oxygen should not be given routinely in the absence of hypoxaemia)

ii.b. CHRONIC HEART FAILURE

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT

- Diuretics – LOE B
  - In patients with resistant oedema (and ascites), a combination of a loop and a thiazide (e.g. **Bendroflumethiazide** 2.5–10mg daily orally) or thiazide-like diuretic (**Metolazone** 2.5–10mg daily orally) may be needed to achieve adequate diuresis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diuretics used in heart failure</th>
<th>Initial dose (mg)</th>
<th>Usual daily dose (mg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Loop diuretic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furosemide (oral/iv)</td>
<td>20–80mg 8-12 hourly</td>
<td>20–420mg 8-12 hourly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bumetanide* (oral)</td>
<td>0.5–1.0mg b.d.</td>
<td>1-5mg b.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torasemide* (oral)</td>
<td>5–10mg o.d.</td>
<td>10-20mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thiazide/thiazide-like diuretic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metolazone (oral)</td>
<td>5mg o.d.</td>
<td>2.5-10mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrochlorothiazide (oral)</td>
<td>25mg o.d.</td>
<td>2.5-10mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bendroflumethiazide (oral)</td>
<td>2.5mg o.d.</td>
<td>2.5-10mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 52: Diuretics used in heart failure*
• Digoxin – LOE B
  • In patients with symptomatic HF and atrial fibrillation, digoxin may be used, in addition to a Beta-blocker to slow down a rapid ventricular rate
  • Digoxin may also be used in patients with HFrEF in sinus rhythm, who are symptomatic despite full tolerated doses of HF standard therapy; digoxin is less effective in the presence of hypokalemia or hypocalcaemia however avoid in hypercalcemia or hypomagnesaemia which may predispose to serious arrhythmias

• Neurohomornal blockers (disease modifying drugs)
  These have been shown to improve survival in patients with HFrEF; by reducing the risk of death and/or hospitalisation. They include:
  • Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEI) - LOE A
    An ACEI is recommended for all patients with symptomatic HFrEF to reduce the risk of death and hospitalisation
  • Angiotensin receptor blockers (ARB)
    ARBs are recommended for patients with HFrEF who are unable to tolerate an ACEI because of cough (patients should also receive a BB and an MRA); they are also recommended for patients with HFrEF who have persisting symptoms (NYHA class II - IV) despite treatment with an ACEI and a BB, and who are unable to tolerate an MRA. ARBs have not been consistently proven to reduce mortality in patients with HFrEF
  • Angiotensin receptor neprilysin inhibitor (ARNI) - LOE B
    An ARNI is recommended to all patients with symptomatic HFrEF to reduce the risk of death and hospitalization
  • Beta-blockers - LOE A
    A Beta-blocker is recommended for all patients with symptomatic HFrEF to reduce the risk of death and hospitalisation; patients should be on an ACEI (or ARB if an ACEI is not tolerated).
  • Mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists (MRA) – LOE A
    An MRA is recommended for all patients with HFrEF and persisting symptoms (NYHA class II - IV) despite treatment with an ACEI (or an ARB if an ACEI is not tolerated) and a Beta-blocker; mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists block receptors that bind aldosterone and other corticosteroids; they have been shown to improve survival in patients with HFrEF

See table 53: Disease modifying medication in heart failure and their doses on next page.

Thrombo-embolism prophylaxis is recommended in all patients with no contra-indication to anticoagulation, to reduce the risk of deep vein thrombosis during admission. Long term anticoagulation is not recommended for chronic HF unless there is a cardiac thrombus, embolic event or atrial fibrillation.
Table 53: Disease modifying medication in heart failure and their doses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Initial dose</th>
<th>Target dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACE-I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lisinopril</td>
<td>2.5-5.0mg o.d.</td>
<td>20-35mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Captopril*</td>
<td>6.25mg t.i.d.</td>
<td>50mg t.i.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramipril</td>
<td>2.5mg o.d.</td>
<td>5mg b.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enalapril</td>
<td>2.5mg b.d</td>
<td>10-20mg b.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bisoprolol</td>
<td>1.25mg o.d.</td>
<td>10mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carvedilol</td>
<td>3.125mg b.i.d.</td>
<td>25-50mg b.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metoprolol succinate (CR/XL)</td>
<td>12.5-25mg o.d.</td>
<td>200mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Candesartan</td>
<td>4-8mg o.d.</td>
<td>32mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valsartan</td>
<td>40mg b.d.</td>
<td>320mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Losartan</td>
<td>25mg o.d</td>
<td>150mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spironolactone</td>
<td>25mg o.d.</td>
<td>50mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARNI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sacubitril*/Valsartan</td>
<td>49/51mg b.d.</td>
<td>97mg/103mg b.d.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

iic. ATRIAL FIBRILLATION

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
- Digoxin (125-250 micrograms daily orally) and/or Beta-blocker should be considered
- Amiodarone* may be considered as per guidelines

→ Refer to a health facility with a physician specialist.

iii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST

iiiia. ACUTE HEART FAILURE

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Full blood cell count
- Kidney function test
- Liver function test
- Thyroid function test
- B-type natriuretic peptides (BNPs) and N-terminal pro-B-type natriuretic peptide (NT-ProBNP) assays (BNP >100pg/ml or NT-ProBNP >300pg/ml in patients who present acutely and BNP >35pg/ml or NT-ProBNP >125pg/ml in patients who present with chronic symptoms virtually exclude the diagnosis of HFrEF.)

For some patients there may be the need to screen for the precipitant of the acute heart failure. These include:
- Infection screen: urine routine examination and culture
- Blood culture
- Chest Xray for pneumonia
- ECG for arrhythmia
- BUE/Cr for CKD
- Markers for acute coronary syndrome: Troponin and CK-MB
- D-Dimer for pulmonary embolism

OTHER INVESTIGATION
- Chest X-ray (possible findings: upper lobe venous blood diversion, pulmonary oedema or Kerley B lines, cardiomegaly-CTR of >0.5, pleural effusions; usually right sided.) CXR may also rule out differential diagnoses such as pneumonia, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease or pulmonary tuberculosis.
- ECG (possible findings: sinus tachycardia, sinus bradycardia, atrioventricular blocks, a bundle branch block pattern, atrial fibrillation, left ventricular hypertrophy, atrial abnormality).6
- Echocardiogram to assess structural heart changes (e.g. valvular defects, congenital defects, ischaemic changes) as the cause of the heart failure. The overall systolic and diastolic function of the ventricles could also be assessed.

NON-PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
- Admit patient and prop up in bed
- Give oxygen in case of hypoxaemia (SPO₂ <90%) (oxygen should not be given routinely in the absence of hypoxaemia)
- Give oxygen from 4L to 15L per minute until SPO₂ >92% in a propped-up position
- Non-invasive positive pressure ventilation (e.g. CPAP) is recommended in patients with respiratory distress (respiratory rate >30-35 breaths/minute and SpO₂ <90% in spite of intranasal O₂ or rebreather mask); non-invasive positive pressure ventilation reduces blood pressure and should be used with caution in hypotensive patients
- Intubation should be considered if hypoxaemia, hypercapnia and/or acidosis cannot be managed non-invasively and also when patient is fatigued

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
- Diuretic therapy important to reduce congestion. This include Furosemide and for resistant cases Metolazone may be combined; Bumetanide*, Torasemide* are other options
  ➔ Refer to table 54 for the doses of diuretics.
- Treatment of the precipitant such as infections, arrhythmia, acute coronary syndrome and pulmonary embolism
- Patients in cardiogenic shock with no evidence of coronary artery disease, pulmonary embolism or hypovolaemia, short-term intravenous inotropic support with Dobutamine 0.5-1mg/kg/min should be given as continuous infusion

iiib. CHRONIC HEART FAILURE

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
- Diuretics- LOE B
  They are recommended to patients with symptoms and signs of fluid overload. Loop diuretics are preferred in HFrEF. In patients with marked fluid overload, intravenous loop diuretics should be given as bolus doses or continuous infusion using syringe pump. A combination of loop diuretic and Metolazone (a thiazide-like diuretic) is recommended for resistant oedema.
  ➔ Example of diuretics used in HF and their doses are shown in the table next page:
Digoxin – LOE B

In patients with symptomatic HF and atrial fibrillation, digoxin may be used, in addition to a Beta-blocker to slow down a rapid ventricular rate. Digoxin may also be used in patients with HFrEF in sinus rhythm, who are symptomatic despite full tolerated doses of HF standard therapy; digoxin is less effective in the presence of hypokalemia or hypocalcaemia. However avoid in hypercalcemia or hypomagnesaemia which may predispose to serious arrhythmias.

Neurohormonal blockers (disease modifying drugs)

These are medications, which have been shown to improve survival in patients with HFrEF; by reducing the risk of death and/or hospitalization. They include:

- Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEI) - LOE A
  An ACEI is recommended for all patients with symptomatic HFrEF to reduce the risk of death and hospitalisation.

- Angiotensin receptor blockers (ARB)
  An ARBs is recommended for patients with HFrEF who are unable to tolerate an ACEi because of cough (patients should also receive a BB and an MRA). It is also recommended in patients with HFrEF who have persisting symptoms (NYHA class II - IV) despite treatment with an ACEi and a BB, and who are unable to tolerate an MRA. ARBs have not been consistently proven to reduce mortality in patients with HFrEF.

- Angiotensin receptor neprilysin inhibitor (ARNI) - LOE B
  An ARNI is recommended to all patients with symptomatic HFrEF to reduce the risk of death and hospitalization.

- Beta-blockers - LOE A
  A Beta-blocker is recommended for all patients with symptomatic HFrEF to reduce the risk of death and hospitalisation. Patients should be on an ACEi (or ARB if an ACEi is not tolerated).

- Mineralocorticoid Receptor Antagonists (MRA) – LOE A
  An MRA is recommended for all patients with HFrEF and persisting symptoms (NYHA class II - IV) despite treatment with an ACEi (or an ARB if an ACEi is not tolerated) and a Beta-blocker. MRAs block receptors that bind aldosterone and other corticosteroids. They have been shown to improve survival in patients with HFrEF.

### Table 54: Diuretics used in heart failure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diuretic</th>
<th>Initial dose</th>
<th>Usual daily dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Loop diuretic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furosemide (oral/iv)</td>
<td>20–80mg 8-12 hourly</td>
<td>20–420mg 8-12 hourly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bumetanide* (oral)</td>
<td>0.5-1.0mg b.d.</td>
<td>1-5mg b.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torasemide* (oral)</td>
<td>5-10mg o.d.</td>
<td>10-20mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thiazide/thiazide-like diuretic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metolazone (oral)</td>
<td>5mg o.d.</td>
<td>2.5-10mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrochlorothiazide (oral)</td>
<td>25mg o.d.</td>
<td>12.5-100mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bendroflumethiazide (oral)</td>
<td>2.5mg o.d.</td>
<td>2.5-10mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 54: Diuretics used in heart failure
Combination of Hydralazine and nitrates – LOE B
A combination of Hydralazine and nitrates is recommended for patients with symptomatic HFrEF who are intolerable to an ACEI or ARB to reduce the risk of death and hospital admission. Patients should be on a Beta-blocker and an MRA. Recommended doses of the combinations are:
- **Hydralazine** 10-25mg 3 times daily orally, increased to 75mg 3 times daily, orally
- **Isosorbide dinitrate** 10mg 3 times daily, orally, increased to 40mg 3 times daily, orally

Ivabradine – LOE B
**Ivabradine** slows the heart rate in sinus rhythm by inhibiting the If channel in the sinus node. It is recommended for patients with symptomatic HFrEF in sinus rhythm with heart rate >70 bpm despite maximum doses of Beta-blocker, and, an ACEI (or ARB) and an MRA (or ARB). It has been shown to reduce heart failure hospital admissions in these patients.

### Table 55: Disease modifying medication in heart failure and their doses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease modifying medication</th>
<th>Initial dose</th>
<th>Target dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ACEI</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Lisinopril</td>
<td>0.25-5.0mg o.d.</td>
<td>20-35mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Captopril</td>
<td>6.25mg t.i.d.</td>
<td>50mg t.i.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Ramipril</td>
<td>2.5mg o.d.</td>
<td>5mg b.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Enalapril</td>
<td>2.5mg b.d</td>
<td>10-20mg b.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Beta-blocker</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Bisoprolol</td>
<td>1.25mg o.d.</td>
<td>10mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Carvedilol</td>
<td>3.125mg b.i.d.</td>
<td>25-50mg b.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Metoprolol succinate (CR/XL)</td>
<td>12.5-25mg o.d.</td>
<td>200mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ARB</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Candesartan</td>
<td>4-8mg o.d.</td>
<td>32mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Valsartan</td>
<td>40mg b.d.</td>
<td>160mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Losartan</td>
<td>25mg o.d.</td>
<td>150mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MRA</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Spironolactone</td>
<td>25mg o.d.</td>
<td>50mg o.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ARNI</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Sacubitril*/Valsartan</td>
<td>49/51mg b.d.</td>
<td>97mg/103mg b.d.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**National Guidelines for the Management of Cardiovascular Diseases | 121**
iv. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A CARDIOLOGIST

iva. ADDITIONAL NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

- Echocardiography
- Coronary angiography
- Left and right heart haemodynamic evaluation
- Ambulatory ECG monitoring (Holter)
- Ambulatory blood pressure monitoring
- Cardiac magnetic resonance imaging (CMR)
- Genetic testing

ivb. DEVICE/INTERVENTIONAL THERAPY

Implantable cardioverter-defibrillator – LOE B
An implantable cardioverter defibrillator is recommended to reduce sudden cardiac death in patients with symptomatic HFrEF and a LVEF ≤35%, who are expected to survive for >1 year with good functional status.

Cardiac resynchronization therapy (CRT)
CRT is recommended to reduce hospital admissions and premature deaths in patients with HFrEF in sinus rhythm with a QRS duration of ≥120 ms, LBBB QRS morphology, and a LVEF ≤35%, who are expected to survive with good functional status for >1 year.

CRT should be considered to reduce hospital admissions and premature deaths in patients with HFrEF in sinus rhythm with a QRS duration of ≥150 ms, irrespective of QRS morphology, and an LVEF ≤35% who are expected to survive with good functional status for >1 year.

ivc. MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH HYPERTENSION AND HEART FAILURE WITH REDUCED EJECTION FRACTION (HFrEF)

Calcium channel blockers with negative ionotropic effects such as Diltiazem and Verapamil should not be used to treat hypertension in patients with HFrEF, and Moxonidine should also be avoided in patients with HFrEF as it is associated with increased mortality. Short-acting Nifedipine is contraindicated in HFrEF.

ivd. MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH ANAEMIA AND HEART FAILURE

In patients with NYHA class II and III HF and iron deficiency (Ferritin <100ng/ml or 100-300ng/ml if transferrin saturation is <20%), intravenous iron replacement given cautiously might be reasonable to improve functional status.
REFERENCES

1 National Heart Foundation of Australia/Cardiac Society of Australia and New Zealand (NHFA/CSANZ) Heart Failure Guidelines 2018.


5 American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. 2005
5 DISEASES

5.5 VENOUS THROMBOEMBOLISM

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANA</td>
<td>Antinuclear antibody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEA</td>
<td>Carcinoembryonic antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRP</td>
<td>C-reactive protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTEPH</td>
<td>Chronic thromboembolic pulmonary hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTPA</td>
<td>CT pulmonary angiography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTV</td>
<td>Deep vein thrombosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBC</td>
<td>Full blood count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPC</td>
<td>Intermittent pneumatic compression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMWH</td>
<td>Low-molecular-weight heparin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOAC</td>
<td>Novel oral anticoagulant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE</td>
<td>Pulmonary embolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSA</td>
<td>Prostate specific antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTS</td>
<td>Post thrombotic syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USG</td>
<td>Ultra sonography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VTE</td>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WBC</td>
<td>White blood cell count</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.5.1 INTRODUCTION

i. DEFINITION
Venous thromboembolism (VTE) has two major clinical manifestations. The first and more common manifestation is deep vein thrombosis (DVT), which usually arises in the deep veins of the lower extremities. DVT may less commonly affect other sites, including the upper limbs, subclavian, superior vena cava, intracranial and splanchnic veins. Pulmonary embolism (PE), the second and more serious manifestation of VTE, commonly occurs as a complication of DVT of the lower extremities. It is estimated that about 50–60% of patients are likely to develop DVT, most of which are subclinical. The clinical course of DVT may be complicated acutely by the potentially fatal conditions of pulmonary embolism (PE), and in the long term by recurrent DVT and the debilitating post thrombotic syndrome (PTS). The incidence of chronic thromboembolic pulmonary hypertension (CTEPH) among survivors of pulmonary embolism is about 3%.

ii. EPIDEMIOLOGY
Despite the increasing burden of CVDs in African populations, there is no available estimate of the burden of VTE at the continental level.
VTE has been shown to be predominantly a disease of older people in the developed world with incidence rate being somewhat higher among women of childbearing age, while incidence rate after age 45 are generally higher in men.
The prevalence of DVT in Africa varies between 2.4% and 9.6% in patients after surgery, and incident rate between 380 and 448 per 100,000 births per year in pregnant and postpartum women.

iii. RISK FACTORS
VTE is considered to be a consequence of the interaction between patient-related (usually permanent) risk factors, and setting-related (usually temporary) risk factors.
VTE may be provoked (i.e. when it occurs in the presence of an identifiable risk factor within the prior 6 weeks to 3 months before diagnosis) or unprovoked (when there is no such identifiable risk factor).

Table 56: Risk factors for VTE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weak risk factors</th>
<th>Moderate risk factors</th>
<th>Strong risk factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bed rest for 3 days</td>
<td>Arthroscopic knee surgery</td>
<td>Fracture (hip or leg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immobility due to sitting (e.g. prolonged car or air travel)</td>
<td>Central venous lines</td>
<td>Major orthopaedic surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increasing age</td>
<td>Chemotherapy</td>
<td>Major general surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopic surgery (e.g. cholecystectomy)</td>
<td>Congestive heart failure or chronic respiratory disease</td>
<td>Trauma with multiple injuries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity</td>
<td>Hormone replacement therapy</td>
<td>Spinal cord injury (paralysis/quadriparies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy/antepartum</td>
<td>Malignancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Varicose veins</td>
<td>Oral contraceptive therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stroke (hemiparesis or hemiplegia)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pregnancy/postpartum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Previous venous thromboembolism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thrombophilia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.5.2 DEEP VEIN THROMBOSIS

i. **CLINICAL PRESENTATION**

ia. **SYMPTOMS (USUALLY UNILATERAL)**

- Leg swelling - most specific symptom
- Leg pain
- Warmth or reddening of the skin over the area of thrombosis
- Clinical symptoms of PE as the primary manifestation *(refer to PE paragraph of this chapter)*

ib. **SIGNS**

- Low grade fever
- Unilateral lower limb swelling with tenderness
- Variable discoloration of the lower extremity
- Differential warmth

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 57: Two-level DVT Well’s score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinical feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active cancer (diagnosed within the last 6 months or undergoing treatment)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paralysis, paresis or recent plaster immobilisation of the lower extremities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recently bedridden for 3 days or more or major surgery within 12 weeks requiring general or regional anaesthesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Localised tenderness along the distribution of the deep venous system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calf swelling at least 3 cm larger than normal side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pitting oedema confined to the affected leg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collateral superficial veins (non-varicose)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previously documented DVT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An alternative diagnosis is as likely as DVT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Clinical probability simplified score**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Patient score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DVT likely</td>
<td>2 points or more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVT unlikely</td>
<td>Less than 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:**

In patients with symptoms involving both lower limbs, the more affected leg should be used.

- If the score ≥2 points = DVT likely: perform compression venous ultrasound; if positive, treat as DVT
- If compression venous ultrasound is inconclusive, run a D-dimer test; if D-dimer test is positive and compression venous ultrasound is negative, repeat ultrasound in 1 week
- If both D-dimer and compression venous ultrasound are negative, DVT is excluded
- If the score <2 points = DVT unlikely: perform D-dimer test (where available); if D-dimer test is negative, DVT is excluded; if D-dimer test is positive, perform compression venous ultrasound
- If compression venous ultrasound is negative, DVT is excluded; if positive, treat as DVT

Alternative diagnoses may include superficial thrombophlebitis, post thrombotic syndrome, cellulitis, muscle strain, venous insufficiency, popliteal (Bakers) cyst, haematoma and pseudo-aneurysm.
ii. MANAGEMENT ACCORDING TO LEVEL OF CARE

ii.a. HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR

- Score as per algorithm shown in figure 19
- Supportive therapy with analgesic
- Refer to a health facility with a doctor.

ii.b. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR

- Score as per algorithm shown in figure 19

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

D-dimer:
D-dimer levels are elevated in plasma in the presence of acute thrombosis because of simultaneous activation of coagulation and fibrinolysis.

The negative predictive value of D-dimer testing is high and a normal D-dimer level renders acute PE or DVT unlikely. On the other hand, the positive predictive value of elevated D-dimer levels is low which implies that a positive D-dimer does not mean absolute diagnosis as could be elevated in other medical conditions such as infections.

NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

- Imaging for DVT
  - Compression venous ultrasound

  Compression venous ultrasonography (CUS) is currently the first-line imaging examination for suspected DVT because of its relative ease of use.

- Note: Above knee (proximal) DVT have a higher risk of embolisation.
Abdominal ultrasonography USG and chest X-ray may be considered to establish some of the risk factors for DVT such as abdominal/chest malignancies.

**PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT**

➔ If DVT is confirmed, start parenteral therapeutic anticoagulation as follows.

➔ Refer to a specialist for continuation of treatment, monitoring of anticoagulation and management of associated complications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medication</th>
<th>Route of administration</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enoxaparin</td>
<td>subcutaneous</td>
<td>1.5mg/kg daily (1mg/kg twice daily in obese patient)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Caution: if eGFR &lt; 30 ml/min: use an alternative medication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dalteparin</td>
<td>subcutaneous</td>
<td>100 IU/kg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unfractionated heparin</td>
<td>subcutaneous</td>
<td>Bolus of 80 units per kg, then 300 units per kg in divided doses daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fondaparinux*</td>
<td>subcutaneous</td>
<td>If body weight &lt;50kg: 5mg daily,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>50-100kg: 7.5mg daily,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;100kg: 10mg daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LABORATORY INVESTIGATION**

D-dimer

In addition, laboratory investigation for possible risk factors for DVT can be considered. These include:

- C-reactive protein (CRP): non-specific, may be elevated in cancers, infections and inflammation
- Antinuclear antibody (ANA)
- Prostate specific antigen (PSA)
- Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)
- Anti-phospholipid syndrome Antithrombin deficiency
- Protein C deficiency
- Protein S deficiency
- Factor V Leiden
- Prothrombin 20210 mutation
- Homocysteine levels

**NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION**

- Compression ultrasound
- Other imaging

Advanced imaging studies used in DVT such as CT scan, venography, impedance plethysmography, MRI, and nuclear imaging are either not readily available or reserved for imaging segments that are not easily accessible by compression ultrasound.

**PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT**

Anticoagulation for inpatients should include Heparin or a low-molecular-weight Heparin (LMWH), followed by the initiation of a vitamin K antagonist usually Warfarin or Novel Oral Anticoagulant (NOAC).

See table 59: Pharmacological treatment of Venous Thromboembolism next page.
On discontinuation of anticoagulation, a venous compression ultrasound should be performed to at least establish a baseline comparative exam in case of recurrence.

Vena caval filters
These are indicated in patients who have absolute contraindications to anticoagulation. Other indications are PE despite adequate anticoagulation and preoperatively when manipulation puts DVT at high risk of embolisation.

Duration of therapy
- For provoked DVTs, where there is a reversible risk factor, consider treatment for 3 months
- For unprovoked DVTs, consider treatment for 6 months; however, if there is recurrence, consider lifelong treatment

Special populations (consider lifelong anticoagulation)
- Recurrent DVT
- Active malignancy
- Thrombophilia/antiphospholipid syndrome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medication Route of administration</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low Molecular Weight Heparin (LMWH): LOE - A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enoxaparin subcutaneous</td>
<td>1.5mg/kg daily (1mg/kg twice daily in obese patient)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dalteparin subcutaneous</td>
<td>100 IU/kg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fondaparinux* subcutaneous</td>
<td>If body weight &lt;50kg: 5mg daily Body weight 50-100 kg: 7.5mg daily Body weight &gt; 100 kg: 10 mg daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tinzaparin* subcutaneous</td>
<td>175 IU/ kg daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Vitamin K Antagonist (Warfarin)
- Starting dose: 5-10mg daily orally (in healthcare facilities without specialist, and in the elderly patients, the starting dose of Warfarin should not exceed 5mg)
- Initiate Warfarin on day 1 of parenteral anticoagulation therapy
- Check INR on the 3rd day and adjust dose accordingly
- Overlap Warfarin and parenteral anticoagulant until desired INR is maintained for 2 consecutive days, and then discontinue parenteral anticoagulation therapy
- Typical maintenance dose: 2 to 10mg orally once a day
- Dosage must be individualised according to the patient’s INR
- Target INR: 2.5 (range: 2 to 3)
- Renal dose: no dosage adjustment is necessary for patients with renal failure

or

2. Novel oral anticoagulants (NOACs): LOE: B
- Rivaroxaban* oral 15mg twice daily for 21 days, then 20mg daily for at least 3 months
- Apixaban* oral 10mg twice daily for 7 days, then 5mg twice daily for at least 3-6 months
- Dabigatran* oral 150mg twice daily for at least 3-6 months (must be preceded by 5-10 days of LMWH)
- Edoxaban* oral 60mg once daily for at least 3-6 months (30 mg once daily if CrCl <30 ml/min); must be preceded by 5-10 days of LMWH therapy

Table 59: Pharmacological treatment of venous thromboembolism
5.5.3 ACUTE PULMONARY EMBOLISM (PE)

i. CLASSIFICATION OF ACUTE PE
A classification of pulmonary embolism is based on the stage (acute or chronic) and the size or haemodynamic consequences of the emboli (massive or sub-massive).

Massive PE: It is characterised by systemic arterial hypotension defined as:
- A systolic arterial pressure <90 mmHg sustained for at least 15 minutes or
- A drop in systolic arterial pressure of at least 40 mmHg for at least 15 minutes which is not caused by new onset arrhythmias or
- Shock (manifested by evidence of tissue hypoperfusion and hypoxia, including an altered level of consciousness, oliguria, or cold, clammy extremities)

Sub-massive PE:
A subgroup of patients with non-massive PE who are haemodynamically stable but with right ventricular dysfunction or hypokinesia confirmed by echocardiogram (McConnel sign) or CTPA.

Non-massive PE:
It may not show any clinical or haemodynamic signs or right ventricular dysfunction based on echocardiogram.

ii. CLINICAL PRESENTATION
The diagnosis of PE may be easily missed since the clinical signs and symptoms are non-specific and may vary widely. When the clinical presentation raises the suspicion of PE in an individual patient, it should prompt further objective testing.
PE may be completely asymptomatic and be discovered incidentally during diagnostic workup for another disease or at autopsy.

iia. SYMPTOMS
- Dyspnoea (difficulty in breathing)
- Pleuritic chest pain
- Cough
- Haemoptysis
- Sudden collapse/syncope
- Low grade fever
- Decreased level of consciousness

iib. SIGNS
- Tachypnoea (respiratory rate >20/min)
- Accentuated second heart sound
- Tachycardia (heart rate >100/min)
- Fever (temperature >37.5°C)
- Diaphoresis (profuse sweating)
- S3 or S4 gallop
- Clinical symptoms and signs suggesting DVT
- Cardiac murmur
- Cyanosis

See table 60: Assessment of clinical probability in acute PE on the next page.
Use the Well’s or Geneva rules to choose tests based on a patient’s risk for PE.

**Table 60: Assessment of clinical probability in acute PE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical characteristic</th>
<th>Simplified Well’s score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Previous pulmonary embolism or deep vein thrombosis</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart rate &gt;100 beats per minute</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recent surgery or immobilisation (within the last 30 days)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical signs of deep vein thrombosis</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternative diagnosis less likely than pulmonary embolism</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemoptysis</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancer (treated within the last 6 months)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Clinical probability score**

- PE unlikely: less than 2
- PE likely: =2 or more

**Figure 20:**
Diagnostic algorithm for pulmonary embolism without shock or hypotension

For non-massive PE

- If the score ≥2 points = PE likely: Perform CT-PA; if positive, treat as PE; if negative, consider alternative diagnosis
➔ If the score <2 points = PE unlikely: Perform D-dimer test (where available); if D-dimer test is negative, PE is excluded; if D-dimer test is positive, perform CT-PA. If CT-PA is negative, PE excluded; if positive, treat as PE

![Diagnostic algorithm for pulmonary embolism with shock or hypotension](image)

➔ Note: In the absence of immediate CT-PA and/or echocardiogram, administer iv bolus unfractionated heparin 5000–7500 IU in the average adult and refer.

### iii. MANAGEMENT ACCORDING TO LEVEL OF CARE

#### iiiia. HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR
➔ Assess on Well’s Score (*figure 19*)
➔ **Immediate referral to health facility with a doctor.**

While waiting for transport:
- Intranasal oxygen
- Elevate head of the bed
- Hydration with normal saline

#### iiiib. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR/PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST
- Assess on Well’s score for PE and follow algorithm, *figure 19*
- If score is less than 2 (PE unlikely), request D-dimer test and follow as per algorithm, *figure 20*
- If score >2 (PE likely), administer stat dose of LMWH and follow algorithm, *figure 20*
- If score >2 (PE likely) with shock, follow algorithm, *figure 21*
➔ **Note:** If D-dimer test not available refer to facility with a specialist.
LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Full blood cell count
- White blood cell count may be elevated (risk of confusion with pneumonia—always risk stratify if PE suspected)
- Clotting profile
- Doppler USG of lower limb and pelvis if indicated

NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
Chest radiographs may be normal in pulmonary embolism, but where abnormal the findings may be non-specific as follows:
- pleural effusion
- parenchymal opacities
- elevation of a hemidiaphragm

These classic radiographic findings of pulmonary embolism are infrequently observed:
- Hamptons hump: wedge-shaped, pleura-based triangular opacity with an apex pointing toward the hilum.
- Westermark sign: decreased vascularity or focal area of oligemia.

Electrocardiogram (ECG)
Electrocardiographic abnormalities which may be suggestive of PE include sinus tachycardia (most common finding):
- Atrial fibrillation - usually new onset
- Nonspecific ST-T wave abnormalities
- S1 Q3 T3 (classical finding) is nonspecific and insensitive in the absence of clinical suspicion for pulmonary embolism
- Right heart strain findings such as
  - tall, peaked P waves in lead II (P pulmonale);
  - right axis deviation;
  - right bundle-branch block (complete or incomplete)

See figure 23: ECG (if available) findings in PE on next page.
Echocardiogram
- This modality generally has limited accuracy in the diagnosis of PE; it may allow diagnosis of other conditions that may be confused with PE, such as pericardial effusion
- Haemodynamically unstable patients with suspected PE should have urgent echocardiogram; the presence of signs of RV pressure overload and dysfunction should justify immediate reperfusion treatment (e.g. thrombolysis) for PE; in such cases CT angiography should be done when patients are stable
- Echocardiographic examination is not recommended as part of the diagnostic work-up in haemodynamically stable, normotensive patients with suspected PE

CT pulmonary angiography
Computed tomography pulmonary angiography (CTPA) is the earliest imaging modality of choice for stable patients with suspected PE.

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT

MASSIVE PE

Initial anticoagulation
Besides haemodynamic and respiratory support, intravenous UFH should be administered to these patients as the preferred mode of initial anticoagulation (refer algorithm). The dosing of UFH is adjusted, based on the activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT).

Thrombolysis
➔ Thrombolytic therapy is recommended for PE patients with shock who remain hemodynamically unstable after initial preferred anticoagulation and supportive therapy.

In patients with contraindications to thrombolysis, and in those in whom thrombolysis has failed to improve the haemodynamic status; percutaneous catheter-directed treatment or surgical embolectomy is recommended when available.
Note: Heparin infusion must be discontinued during thrombolysis with Streptokinase but resume after thrombolysis.

**NON-MASSIVE PE**

For cases of acute PE without shock or hypotension, treatment is the same as treatment for DVT (refer to section on DVT of this chapter).

Patients with non-massive PE require further risk stratification after the diagnosis of PE has been confirmed. In these patients, risk assessment should begin with a validated clinical score, preferably the Pulmonary Embolism Severity Index (PESI) or simplified PESI (sPESI).

Low-risk patients with sPESI of 0, should be considered for early discharge and outpatient treatment, if this appears feasible based on the patient’s anticipated compliance as well as his/her family and social background.

**Non-pharmacological management**

- Educating patients on risk factors of VTE
- Counselling patients on anticoagulation medication adherence; advise patients on drugs that may interfere with anticoagulation
- Carrying anti-coagulation medication card/bracelet

**Duration of anticoagulation**

- Unprovoked PE should generally be treated with anticoagulation for at least 6 months
  - A compression ultrasound should be repeated at 3 months before cessation of therapy for all confirmed DVTs and in the case of a PE a CT-PA; where resources are limited an echocardiogram may be performed instead of a CT-PA; treatment may be extended if PE persist
- Anticoagulants are only discontinued when the perceived risk of anticoagulation-related bleeding and the inconvenience of remaining on treatment outweigh the risk of recurrent VTE
- For patients with irreversible risk factors (unprovoked PE), or those presenting with recurrent PE, lifelong anticoagulation therapy should be considered

**Table 61: Dosage for thrombolysis medication**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medications</th>
<th>Route of administration</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Streptokinase*</td>
<td>iv</td>
<td>250,000 IU as a loading dose over 30 minutes, followed by 100,000 U/hour over 12-24 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recombinant tissue plasminogen activator (rt-PA)/alteplase LOE - B</td>
<td>iv</td>
<td>90mg as a continuous infusion over 2 hours; a 10mg bolus is administered first, followed by 85mg administered over 2 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 62: Simplified PESI**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age &gt; 80 years</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History of cancer</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History of heart failure or lung disease</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse ≥ 110 bpm</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systolic bp &lt; 100</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arterial oxygen saturation &lt;90</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Score summary</strong></td>
<td>0 points - low risk ≥ 1 points - high risk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.5.4 MANAGEMENT OF VTE IN SPECIAL POPULATIONS (RELEVANT FOR ALL LEVELS OF CARE)

i. PREGNANCY AND LACTATION
In pregnancy, establishing a clear guideline for the treatment of VTE is difficult from an evidence-based perspective. LMWH is the anticoagulant of choice, given its relative safety for the foetus\(^7\). Warfarin is safe during lactation but not advised in pregnancy. There is not enough evidence to warrant use of NOACs in pregnancy and lactation due to limited evidence.

ii. PATIENTS WITH CANCER
LMWH is usually preferred in patients with VTE and cancer\(^7\).

iii. CHRONIC THROMBOEMBOLIC PULMONARY HYPERTENSION (CTEPH)
Chronic thromboembolic pulmonary hypertension (CTEPH) usually results from obstruction of the pulmonary vascular bed by non-resolving thromboemboli in patients with DVT, acute or recurrent PE. Increased pulmonary vascular resistance subsequently leads to progressive pulmonary hypertension, right atrial dilatation, right ventricular hypertrophy and right ventricular failure. Studies suggest that 1%-3.8% of patients with acute PE may develop CTEPH two years after diagnosis\(^10\).

First-line imaging for diagnosis of CTEPH is planar ventilation-perfusion (V/Q) lung scan. However, echocardiography, CT pulmonary angiography, right heart catheterisation and pulmonary angiography should be done when available.

Pulmonary endarterectomy (surgical) in addition to secondary prevention with medical therapy as well insertion of vena caval filters are the management of choice. Without surgical treatment, the prognosis of patients with CTEPH is poor.

5.5.5 PREVENTION OF VTEs
The rationale for use of thromboprophylaxis is based on solid principles and scientific evidence. Almost all hospitalised patients have at least one risk factor for VTE, and approximately 40% have three or more risk factors. Without thromboprophylaxis, the incidence of objectively confirmed, hospital-acquired DVT is approximately 10 to 40% among medical or general surgical patients and 40 to 60% following major orthopaedic surgery\(^11\).

The mortality, acute and long-term morbidities, and resource utilisation related to unprevented VTE strongly support effective preventive strategies at least for moderate-risk and high-risk patients\(^11\).

i. MECHANICAL THROMBOPROPHYLAXIS FOR ALL LEVELS OF CARE
- Early and frequent ambulation of hospitalised patients
- Specific mechanical methods of thromboprophylaxis include graduated compression stockings (GCS), intermittent pneumatic compression (IPC) devices, and the venous foot pump (VFP)
- The primary advantage of mechanical thromboprophylaxis is its use in patients at high risk of bleeding
ii. PHARMACOLOGICAL THROMBOPROPHYLAXIS FOR HEALTH FACILITIES WITH A DOCTOR/SPECIALIST

For acutely ill medical patients admitted to hospital with congestive heart failure or severe respiratory disease, or who are confined to bed and have one or more additional risk factors, including active cancer, previous VTE, sepsis, acute neurologic disease, or inflammatory bowel disease, it is recommended that thromboprophylaxis with LMWH, unfractionated Heparin or Fondaparinux be administered. Thromboprophylaxis should also be considered in surgical patients with moderate to high risk for VTE and also for those undergoing pelvic and orthopaedic surgeries.

Table 63: Dosage of pharmacologic thromboprophylaxis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medications</th>
<th>Route of administration</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dalteparin</td>
<td>subcutaneous</td>
<td>5,000 IU once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enoxaparin</td>
<td>subcutaneous</td>
<td>40mg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unfractionated Heparin</td>
<td>subcutaneous</td>
<td>5000 IU twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fondaparinux*</td>
<td>subcutaneous</td>
<td>2.5mg daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REFERENCES

5 DISEASES

5.6 ACUTE RHEUMATIC FEVER

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ARF</td>
<td>Acute Rheumatic Fever</td>
<td>FBC</td>
<td>Full Blood Count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPG</td>
<td>Benzathine Penicillin G</td>
<td>GAS</td>
<td>Group A beta-haemolytic Streptococcus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRP</td>
<td>C-Reactive Protein</td>
<td>RHD</td>
<td>Rheumatic Heart Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECG</td>
<td>Electrocardiography</td>
<td>WBC</td>
<td>White Blood Cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>Erythrocyte Sedimentation Rate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.6.1 INTRODUCTION

i. DEFINITION
Acute rheumatic fever (ARF) is an immune-mediated, non-suppurating complication of an infection of the pharynx (and less commonly the skin) with group A beta-haemolytic streptococcus (GAS)\(^1\). A preceding pharyngitis, with an ensuing two to three-week symptom-free period occurs before the first symptoms or signs of ARF appear. There is an acute, generalised inflammatory response usually involving only certain parts of the body, especially the skin, brain, heart and joints.

ii. EPIDEMIOLOGY
Most cases occur in children between 5 to 15 years of age but may occur at any age. Previous ARF patients are much more likely than most others to develop repeat episodes with majority of mortalities found in developing countries\(^2\). The incidence and prevalence of ARF is reduced in the developed world after measures to reduce transmission of streptococci and improvement in general hygiene were implemented. Additionally, treatment measures were stringently implemented. However, ARF remains common in many developing countries including Ghana\(^3\).

iii. AETIOLOGY
The pathophysiologic mechanisms that lead to acute rheumatic fever (ARF) are not completely known. Streptococcal pharyngeal infection is a prerequisite, and genetic susceptibility may be present. GAS skin infections may play a role in ARF pathogenesis. As a result of molecular mimicry, antibodies directed against GAS antigens cross-react with host antigens\(^4\). Cellular immunity is also thought to play a role in ARF. About 3–5% of the population may have an inborn susceptibility to ARF, the basis of which is uncertain\(^4\).

5.6.2 CLINICAL PRESENTATION
The diagnosis of ARF is usually guided by the modified Jones criteria, 2015. Currently, there is no diagnostic laboratory test for ARF, so diagnosis remains a clinical decision.

See table 64: Modified Jones criteria for the diagnosis of ARF\(^5\) next page.

i. MAJOR MANIFESTATIONS

ARTHRITIS
- Swollen and hot joint with pain on movement
- Asymmetrical and migratory
- Joints may be involved one after the other or several of them involved simultaneously without remitting
- Large joints are usually affected, particularly the ankles and knees
- Extremely painful arthritis

SYDENHAM’S CHOREA
- Abrupt, uncoordinated movements, especially affecting the hands, feet, tongue and face, which are not present during sleep
- May involve only one side of the body (hemichorea)
- Adolescent females are particularly affected\(^8\)

The presence of chorea may be a predictor of future carditis in a patient managed for ARF\(^7\).
CARDITIS

- Florid inflammation of the myocardium, endocardium and pericardium with involvement of the endocardium being predominant
- Mainly affecting the mitral and aortic valves
- Incidence of carditis in initial attacks of ARF lies between 30% and 82%.
- Carditis may present early on in the disease but usually presents within the first 2–6 weeks, making repeated physical examination during admission critical
- There are four clinical findings of carditis:
  (a) significant murmur due to valvulitis
  (b) cardiac enlargement
  (c) cardiac decompensation
  (d) pericardial friction rub or effusion

VALVULITIS

- Most commonly affects the mitral valve
- Results in regurgitation or stenotic lesions occurring due to extensive scar formation
- Mitral regurgitation is an apical blowing, holosystolic murmur which may have an associated mid-diastolic flow murmur (Carey Coomb’s murmur)
- In aortic valvulitis, usually seen as aortic regurgitation, an early diastolic murmur is heard at the base of the heart (enhanced by leaning forward and also in expiration)
- Valvulitis usually leads to heart failure and eventually rheumatic heart disease

---

Table 64: Modified Jones criteria for the diagnosis of ARF

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Moderate/high-risk groups</th>
<th>Low-risk groups (ARF incidence ≤2 per 100,000 school-aged children or all-age)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Major manifestations</strong></td>
<td>Carditis (including subclinical evidence of rheumatic valvulitis on echocardiogram)</td>
<td>Carditis (excluding subclinical evidence of rheumatic valvulitis on echocardiogram)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Polyarthritis or aseptic mono-arthritis or polyarthralgia</td>
<td>Polyarthritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chorea</td>
<td>Chorea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Erythema marginatum</td>
<td>Erythema marginatum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Subcutaneous nodules</td>
<td>Subcutaneous nodules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minor manifestations</strong></td>
<td>Monoarthritis</td>
<td>Fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>Polyarthralgia or aseptic monoarthritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ESR ≥30 mm/h</td>
<td>ESR ≥30 mm/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CRP ≥30 mg/L</td>
<td>CRP ≥30 mg/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prolonged P-R interval on ECG</td>
<td>Prolonged P-R interval on ECG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When there is enlargement of the heart, it can be diagnosed clinically by the displaced apex and subsequently confirmed with echocardiography\textsuperscript{11,12}.
Pericarditis is uncommon in ARF. It should be considered in patients with ARF, who have chest pain and/or a friction rub\textsuperscript{5}.

**SUBCUTANEOUS NODULES**
- Uncommon (usually below 2% of cases) but very specific for ARF
- The usual size is 0.5–2 cm in diameter and are mobile, painless and nodular crops of up to 12 over the elbows, wrists, knees and ankles
- They appear 1–2 weeks after the onset of the other symptoms and resolve after 1–2 weeks\textsuperscript{13}

**ERYTHEMA MARGINATUM**
- Found in less than 2% of cases in developing countries and also very specific for ARF
- They are dark blanching maculopapular rash
- Lesions may be recurrent and unresponsive to medication and show up more after taking a bath
- They are found on the trunk and proximal extremities, are not painful or itchy and are almost never on the face\textsuperscript{13}

### ii. MINOR MANIFESTATIONS

**ARTHRALGIA**
- It is a non-specific symptom described as migratory, asymmetrical and affecting large joints
- There is pain on moving the joint with no associate swelling or differential warmth

**FEVER**
- Mostly associated with other manifestations of ARF
- Described as peak oral, tympanic or rectal temperatures commonly more than 38°C\textsuperscript{5}
- Fever, like arthritis and arthralgia, usually responds well to salicylates

**ELEVATED ACUTE-PHASE REACTANTS**
- ARF patients usually have a raised serum C-reactive protein (CRP) level and erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)
- The peripheral white blood cell (WBC) count is <15×10⁹/l in 75% of patients, making elevated WBC an insensitive marker of inflammation in ARF
- Most patients have both a serum CRP level of >30mg/l and an ESR of >30 mm/h\textsuperscript{13}
- The serum CRP concentration rises more rapidly than the ESR, and also falls more rapidly with resolution of the attack, the ESR may remain elevated for 3–6 months

**PROLONGED P–R INTERVAL (PR >200MS/0.2SECONDS)/CONDUCTION ABNORMALITIES**
- A prolonged P-R interval that resolves over days to weeks may be a useful diagnostic feature especially adjunctive to other clinical features
- Severe first-degree block may lead to a junctional rhythm, second-degree or complete heart block
- Electrocardiography (ECG) should be documented in all cases of possible ARF and if a prolonged P-R interval is detected, the ECG should be repeated after 2 weeks, and again at 2 months to document a normal tracing; the return of the ECG to normal supports the diagnosis of ARF\textsuperscript{14}
5.6.3 MANAGEMENT ACCORDING TO LEVEL OF CARE

Confirmation of the diagnosis and timely treatment are key. All patients with suspected ARF (first episode or recurrence) should be hospitalised.

i. HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Full blood cell count
- Malaria parasite RDT/Blood film

Diagnosis of ARF at a health facility without a doctor may be difficult.
➔ Patient with persistent fever, joint pains and skin rashes should be referred to a facility with a doctor.

ii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Full blood cell count
- Blood cultures
- Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)
- C-reactive protein (CRP)

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT

Intramuscular (im) Benzathine Penicillin G (LOE A)
- Adults: 1,200,000 U as a single shot
- Children less than 20 kg: 600,000 U as a single shot
  or
Oral Penicillin V (LOE A)
- Adults: 500mg twice daily for 10 days
- Children: 250mg twice daily for 10 days

➔ Patients with a known allergy to Penicillin: oral Erythromycin (LOE B)

Arthritis and fever
- Aspirin starting at a dose of 50–60mg/kg/day, titrated up to 80–100mg/kg/day (4–8 g/day in adults) and administered in divided doses; the dose may be increased to 125mg/kg/day at which time signs of toxicity must be looked for (LOE A)
- Naproxen, (10–20mg/kg/day) or Ibuprofen are suitable alternatives given twice-daily (LOE B)
- If the diagnosis is uncertain, Paracetamol or Codeine may be administered for pain relief (LOE C)

➔ Note: If clinical signs do not resolve within 3 days of start of medications, look for an alternative diagnosis.

➔ Anti-inflammatory medication may be given for 1–2 weeks; however, it may be continued for as long as 6 weeks depending on how drastically the clinical symptoms and inflammatory markers improve.

Carditis/heart failure
- Bed rest with mobilisation
- Gradual ambulation, especially in patients with heart failure

➔ Refer patient to a health facility with a physician specialist, when there is severe carditis with persistent heart failure, or poor resolution of symptoms despite optimal treatment.
iii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

- Full blood cell count (FBC)
- Blood cultures
- Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)
- C-reactive protein (CRP)
- Throat swab (before giving antibiotics): culture for GAS
- Antistreptococcal serology: Anti Streptolysin O titre and anti-DNase B titres which may be repeated in two weeks if the result is not confirmatory

NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

- Electrocardiogram
- Chest X-ray
- Echocardiogram (consider repeating after 1 month, if negative)

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT

Intramuscular (im) Benzathine Penicillin G (LOE A)

- Adults: 1,200,000 U as a single shot
- Children less than 20 kg: 600,000 U as a single shot
  or
Oral Penicillin V (LOE A)

- Adults: 500mg twice daily for 10 days
- Children: 250mg twice daily for 10 days
  ➔ Patients with a known allergy to Penicillin: oral Erythromycin (LOE B)

Arthritis and fever

- Aspirin starting at a dose of 50–60mg/kg/day, titrated up to 80–100mg/kg/day (4–8g/day in adults) and administered in divided doses; the dose may be increased to 125 mg/kg/day at which time signs of toxicity must be looked for (LOE A)
- Naproxen (10–20mg/kg/day) or Ibuprofen suitable alternatives given twice-daily¹⁵ (LOE B)
- If the diagnosis is uncertain, Paracetamol or Codeine for pain relief (LOE C)
  ➔ Note: If clinical signs do not resolve within 3 days of start of medications, look for an alternative diagnosis
  ➔ Anti-inflammatory medication may be given for 1–2 weeks however may be continued for as long as 6 weeks depending on how drastically the clinical symptoms and inflammatory markers improve

Carditis/heart failure

  ➔ Refer to chapter 5.4 on heart failure.
5.6.4 SECONDARY PREVENTION (APPLIES FOR HEALTH FACILITIES WITH A DOCTOR AND A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST)

This is the continual use of antibiotics in patients with a history of rheumatic fever, or rheumatic heart disease. By this treatment, infection with GAS and the subsequent development of recurrent attacks of rheumatic fever is curtailed\(^{17}\). This is an effective ARF prevention strategy\(^{18}\).

Intramuscular (I.M) Benzathine Penicillin G (BPG) (LOE A)

- **Adults:** 900mg (1,200,000 U) as a single shot monthly
- **Children less than 30 kg:** 450mg (600,000 U) as a single shot monthly

> The rates of allergic and anaphylactic reactions to monthly BPG are 3.2% and 0.2%, respectively, and fatalities are rare\(^{18}\).

> Before the start of Penicillin treatment, allergies to these medicines must be assessed (allergy history) in patients and erythromycin used instead in cases of penicillin allergy\(^{18}\).

**In pregnancy**

Erythromycin considered to be safe in patients with known allergies to Penicillin\(^{18}\).

**Duration of secondary prevention**

The appropriate duration of secondary prevention is determined by factors such as age, risk factors in the environment, the most recent episode of ARF among others.

**Table 65: Prophylaxis for acute rheumatic fever**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Definition of category</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All persons with ARF or Rheumatic Heart Disease (RHD)</td>
<td>Minimum 10 years after most recent episode of ARF or until age 21 years (whichever is longer)</td>
<td>Discontinue at that time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status after initial period elapsed:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No RHD</td>
<td>No pathological mitral or aortic regurgitation, but may have minor morphological changes to mitral or aortic valves on echocardiography</td>
<td>Discontinue at that time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild RHD</td>
<td>Mild mitral or aortic regurgitation clinically and on echocardiography, with no clinical evidence of heart failure, and no evidence of cardiac chamber enlargement on echocardiography</td>
<td>Discontinue at that time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate RHD</td>
<td>Any valve lesion of moderate severity clinically (e.g. mild-moderate cardiomegaly and/or mild-moderate heart failure) or on echocardiography, mild mitral regurgitation, together with mild aortic regurgitation clinically or on echocardiography, mild or moderate mitral or aortic stenosis, any pulmonary or tricuspid valve lesion coexisting with a left-sided valve lesion</td>
<td>Continue until 35 years of age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe RHD</td>
<td>Any severe valve lesion clinically (e.g. moderate to severe cardiomegaly or heart failure) or on echocardiography, any impending or previous cardiac valve surgery for RHD</td>
<td>Continue until age 40 years or longer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 24:
Algorithm for diagnosis and management of ARF
(Adapted from the 2012 Australian Guidelines for Diagnosis and Management of ARF)
REFERENCES

5 DISEASES

5.7 RHEUMATIC HEART DISEASE

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RF</td>
<td>Rheumatic fever</td>
<td>LFT</td>
<td>Liver function test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAS</td>
<td>Group A streptococcus</td>
<td>ECG</td>
<td>Electrocardiogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRP</td>
<td>C-reactive protein</td>
<td>JVP</td>
<td>Jugular venous pulsation/pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>Erythrocyte sedimentation rate</td>
<td>S1, S2, S3, S4</td>
<td>First, second, third and fourth heart sounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBC</td>
<td>Full blood count</td>
<td>A1, A2</td>
<td>First and second heart sounds at the aortic area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MR</td>
<td>Mitral regurgitation</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>Second heart sound at the pulmonary area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS</td>
<td>Mitral stenosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHD</td>
<td>Rheumatic heart disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BUE</td>
<td>Blood, urea, and electrolytes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASO</td>
<td>Anti-streptolysin O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CXR</td>
<td>Chest X-ray</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.7.1 INTRODUCTION

i. DEFINITION
The long-term damage to cardiac valves caused by acute rheumatic fever, which can result from a single severe episode or from multiple recurrent episodes of the illness is known as rheumatic heart disease (RHD). It is a known cause of cardiac associated morbidity and mortality in resource poor settings\(^1\).

It is the most serious consequence of acute rheumatic fever with rheumatic carditis. Patients may sometimes present with the complications of RHD, which include heart failure, endocarditis, atrial fibrillation and embolic stroke\(^1\).

ii. EPIDEMIOLOGY
RHD remains the leading cause of acquired heart disease among the young worldwide. The exact mortality rate due to RHD is underestimated in Africa. A large multinational african study demonstrated that RHD is the most frequent cause of heart failure among children and young adults, and importantly that the 180-day mortality rate is as high as 17.8\%\(^2\).

Risk factors for RHD:
- Age: RHD starts in children but its prevalence peaks in adulthood between 25 years to 45 years
- Sex: RHD occurs more commonly in females, relative risk of 1.6 to 2 compared with males
- Environmental factors e.g. household overcrowding
- Rural residence\(^2\)
- Poverty
- Reduced access to medical care

iii. CLASSIFICATION
- Mitral regurgitation
- Mitral stenosis
- Aortic regurgitation
- Aortic stenosis
- Pulmonic valve involvement
- Tricuspid valve involvement

5.7.2 AETIOLOGY
RHD is a late complication of ARF

\(\rightarrow\) Refer to chapter on ARF.

The valves most affected by rheumatic fever, in descending order, are the mitral, aortic, tricuspid, and pulmonary valves. In most cases, the mitral valve is involved with one or more of the other 3. In acute disease, small thrombi form along the lines of valve closure. In chronic disease, there is thickening and fibrosis of the valve resulting in stenosis and regurgitation\(^2\).
5.7.3 SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

i. MITRAL REGURGITATION (MR)

- Mitral regurgitation, as an isolated lesion or in combination with other valvar defects, is probably the most common valvular dysfunction resulting from the acute rheumatic process; in developing countries, severe forms have necessitated early surgical intervention in young patients. Unlike mitral stenosis, when there is a variable latent period between the establishment of the valvular lesion and the acute episode, mitral regurgitation on the other hand is frequently present from the onset of the active process.
- Initial regurgitation has been noted to disappear over periods ranging from 2 months to 9 years, while new lesions such as mitral stenosis, or stenosis combined with regurgitation, appeared over a period of up to 12 years.
- Patients with mitral regurgitation are far more likely to have suffered a more severe acute episode than those with mitral stenosis.

ia. SYMPTOMS

The severity, and to a lesser extent the chronicity, of the regurgitant valve are the main factors in determining the symptoms.

- Patients with mild lesions - completely asymptomatic
- Patients with moderate mitral regurgitation - symptoms may be relatively unimpressive
- Patients with severe valvular incompetence - effort dyspnoea, easy fatiguability, poor weight gain, palpitations on effort, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea, and finally congestive heart failure (CHF).

ib. SIGNS

- Radial pulse may be normal but increased with low volume in severe regurgitation
- Blood pressure - normal with a slightly widened pulse pressure, giving a brisk pulse
- Jugular venous pressure - normal when there is no CHF, elevated in CHF
- Apical impulse - usually normal in those with mild lesions, with no major precordial pulsations
- In significant mitral regurgitation, there is a hyperdynamic forcible left ventricular heaving apex which may be palpable, displaced downwards and laterally
- The first heart sound is normal in intensity or somewhat soft; the second heart sound is usually normal; in severe lesions markedly split because of the shortening of left ventricular systole.
- The presence of a loud third heart sound excludes the coexistence of significant mitral stenosis

⇒ The most important clinical feature is the characteristic apical pan-systolic murmur

- It is heard best at the apex, radiates to the left axilla and left sternal edge and has a blowing quality with no accentuation in mid- or late systole
- Occasionally, especially in the presence of acute valvulitis, the murmur may be short
- A low-pitched third heart sound, which is often palpable and is caused by the considerable early diastolic filling of the ventricle, is heard in those with significant mitral regurgitation and left ventricular failure.

- Associated pulmonary hypertension:
  - right ventricular parasternal lift/heave
  - a loud palpable pulmonary sound
  - murmurs of pulmonary and/or tricuspid incompetence

The clinical signs of mitral regurgitation are much less clear-cut than those of mitral stenosis as a secondary cause of pulmonary hypertension.
ii. MITRAL STENOSIS

iiia. SYMPTOMS
Those with mild stenosis may be completely asymptomatic. Exercise intolerance and atrial fibrillation are among the precipitating causes of the initial presentation of symptoms. Critical or significant mitral stenosis is present when the area of the valvular orifice is reduced to about one-quarter of the expected normal for age.

- The common symptoms in critical stenosis are cough with frothy or blood-stained sputum, effort dyspnoea, orthopnoea, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea and episodes of pulmonary oedema
- These symptoms may be aggravated by recurrence of carditis, intercurrent infections, and uncontrolled tachycardia or atrial fibrillation
- Congestive cardiac failure usually occurs with severe stenosis and moderate-severe pulmonary hypertension

iiib. SIGNS
With chronic mitral stenosis, reduced cardiac output and vasoconstriction can result in mitral facies (violaceous papules on the cheeks). Other signs include:

- Jugular venous distension
- Right ventricular heave in the left parasternal region in the patient with superimposed pulmonary hypertension; a loud P2 might be heard in the left 2nd intercostal space
- Apex beat is usually not displaced unless there is associated mitral regurgitation
- Apical beat may be tapping in nature
- On apical auscultation, there is an opening snap, loud first heart sound, and a low-pitched mid-diastolic rumble murmur
- A high-pitched decrescendo diastolic murmur secondary to pulmonary regurgitation (Graham-Steel's murmur) may be audible at the upper sternal border

iii. AORTIC REGURGITATION (AR)

iiia. SYMPTOMS
Patients with chronic AR are often asymptomatic for several years. When symptoms develop, cardiac function deteriorates quickly, and mortality rate might exceed 10% a year. Symptoms include:

- Palpitations
- Shortness of breath
- Chest pain
- Orthopnoea

iiib. SIGNS
Most of the physical signs of AR are a result of the widened pulse pressures that are characteristic of this condition:

- Visible systolic pulsations of retinal arterioles (fundoscopy)
- Water-hammer pulse
- Bobbing motion of head with each heartbeat
- Systolic murmur over the femoral artery with proximal compression of the artery, and diastolic murmur over the femoral artery with distal compression of the artery
- On palpation, the point of maximal impulse (apex beat) may be diffuse or hyperdynamic but is often displaced inferiorly and laterally, peripheral pulses are prominent or bounding
- Auscultation may reveal an S3 gallop, if left ventricular dysfunction is present\(^7\)
- Early diastolic murmur at right parasternal area which radiates to the apex
- For severe AR, ejection systolic murmur could be heard over the aortic area due to large stroke volume

iv. AORTIC STENOSIS

iva. SYMPTOMS
Usually asymptomatic for up to 20 years. However, the following might be elicited as left ventricular outflow obstruction and myocardial pressure load worsen:
- Exertional dyspnoea (most common initial complaint)
- Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea
- Orthopnoea
- Exertional chest pain\(^8\)
- Syncope

ivb. SIGNS
- Soft S1 and diminished/absent A2
- Paradoxical splitting of S2
- Prominent S4
- Systolic crescendo-decrescendo murmur at the second intercostal space at the right upper sternal border which radiate to the carotid arteries\(^8\)

v. TRICUSPID REGURGITATION (TR)

va. SYMPTOMS
The general presentation is that of right-sided heart failure.
- Exertional dyspnoea
- Abdominal swelling
- Bodily swelling\(^9\)

vb. SIGNS
- S3 gallop
- Jugular venous distension
- Right ventricular heave
- Ascites
- Peripheral oedema
- Pulsatile hepatomegaly\(^9\)

vi. PULMONARY VALVE

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS
- Pulmonic regurgitation is rarely noticed by the patient; however, right ventricular enlargement and/or pulmonary hypertension can ensue and result in heart failure, leading to dyspnoea on exertion (most common), easy fatigability, light-headedness, peripheral oedema, chest pain, palpitations, and frank syncope; the JVP will likely be increased\(^10\)
- Clinical features of pulmonic stenosis include dyspnoea, cyanosis, fatigue, dizziness and syncope, and chest pain\(^11\)
5.7.4 MANAGEMENT ACCORDING TO LEVEL OF CARE

i. HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR
Clinical suspicion or diagnosed based on symptoms and signs.
Place the patient in the cardiac position and perform the following basic labs when available:

- Full blood cell count
- Erythrocyte sedimentation rate

→ Refer to a health facility with a doctor or physician specialist.

ii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
Perform the following:

- Full blood cell count
- Erythrocyte sedimentation rate
- C-reactive protein
- Blood urea electrolytes and creatinine
- Liver function test

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
Provide symptomatic relief with medical treatment when patient has symptoms and signs of heart failure.

- Furosemide:
  - Adults:
    - 20-80mg orally once daily; may be increased by 20-40mg 6-8 hourly; not to exceed 600mg/day
    - Alternative: 20-40mg iv/im once; may be increased by 20mg 2 hourly; individual dose not to exceed 200mg/dose\(^{12}\)
  - Infants and children:
    - 1-2mg/kg iv/im/orally once initially; increased by 1-2mg/kg q6-8hrs (orally) or 1mg/kg q2hrs (iv/im); individual dose not to exceed 6mg/kg\(^{12}\)

→ Refractory chronic heart failure may necessitate larger doses
→ Additional medication can be discussed with specialist before initiation (please note precautions)
→ Refer to health facility with a physician specialist.
iii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
Perform the following:
- Full blood cell count
- Erythrocyte sedimentation rate
- C-reactive protein
- Blood urea electrolytes and creatinine
- Liver function tests
- Throat swab
- Anti-streptolysin O titres

NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- CXR
- ECG
- Echocardiography

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE
Treat based on New York Heart Association staging of heart failure for classes III-IV:

A. Oxygen by nasal prongs or face mask if hypoxaemia is present (SpO₂ <90%)

B. Cardiac position

C. Diuretics
- Furosemide
  - Adults: 20-80mg orally once daily; may be increased by 20-40mg 6-8 hourly; not to exceed 600mg/day
  - Alternative: 20-40mg iv/im once; may be increased by 20mg 2 hourly; individual dose not to exceed 200mg/dose
  - Infants and children: 1-2mg/kg iv/im/orally once initially; increased by 1-2mg/kg 6-8 hourly (orally) or 1mg/kg 2 hours (iv/im). Individual dose not to exceed 6mg/kg

➔ Maintenance after stabilization:
- Furosemide iv
  - Adults: 40-80mg 12 hourly
  - Children: 12-18 years: 20-40mg 8 hourly as required
    1 month - 12 years: 0.5-1mg/kg 8 hourly (max. 4mg/kg/dose)

➔ Patient not improving after initial treatment:
- Furosemide iv
  - Adults: 40-80mg 12 hourly
  - Children: 12-18 years: 20-40mg repeated 8 hourly as necessary
    1 month - 12 years: 0.5-1mg/kg 8 hourly (max. 4mg/kg/dose)
and

- Morphine iv for patients with acute left ventricular failure
  - Adults: 2.5-10mg (for the elderly 2.5-5mg slowly)
  - Children: not recommended

and

- Metoclopramide iv
  - Adults: 10mg to prevent vomiting
  - Children: not required

D. Angiotensin converting enzyme/receptor blocker therapy
- Enalapril
  - Adults: Initial: 2.5mg orally daily or twice daily
    ➔ Maintenance: 5-20mg/day orally daily; titrate slowly over 2 weeks
    ➔ Avoid in unstable heart failure or patients which hypotension
- Losartan
  - Adults: 25mg orally daily initially; may increase to 100mg

E. Digital
- Adults: 250mcg 12 hourly for 1-2 days, then 250mcg daily
- Elderly: 125mcg 12 hourly for 1-2 days, then 125mcg daily
- Children >10 years old: 0.5-1mg in 3 divided doses over 24hrs, then 62.5-250mcg daily
- Children 2-10 years old: 20-30mcgs/kg in 3 divided doses over 24 hours, then 8-10mcg/kg daily
- Children <2 years old: 30-40mcg/kg in 3 divided doses/24 hours, then 8-10mcg/kg daily
- Neonates (full term): 20mcg/kg in 3 divided doses/24 hours, then 8-10mcg/kg daily
- Neonates <1.5 kg: 25mcg/kg in 3 divided doses/24 hours
  - Premature: 15mcg/kg daily, then 5mcg/kg daily

ANTICOAGULATION
- Anticoagulation, if there is a history of thromboembolism and/or atrial fibrillation.
- Adults: Warfarin
  - Initial dose: 2-5mg orally day × 2 days, or 10mg orally × 2 days in healthy individuals
  - It is important to bridge the initiation of Warfarin with unfractionated or low molecular weight heparin;
    check INR after 2 days and adjust dose according to results
  - Typical maintenance dose ranges between 2-10mg/day

RATE CONTROL IN PATIENTS WITH ATRIAL FIBRILLATION
For patients with atrial fibrillation, control of ventricular response could be achieved with the following:
- Adults:
  - Atenolol orally 25-100mg daily
  - or
  - Bisoprolol orally 2.5-10mg daily
  - or
  - Metoprolol tartrate orally 50-100mg twice or three times daily (max. 300mg daily)
SECONDARY PROPHYLAXIS AGAINST RECURRENT ARF AND CARDITIS

- Intramuscular (im) Benzathine Penicillin G (BPG)
  - Adults: 900mg (1,200,000 U) as a single shot monthly
  - Children less than 30 kg: 450mg (600,000 U) as a shot monthly

- **Penicillin V**
  - Adults: 250mg orally twice daily

Duration of prophylaxis:
- RF with carditis and residual heart disease (persistent valvular disease):
  10 years or until age 40 years (whichever is longer)
- RF with carditis but no residual heart disease (no valvular disease):
  10 years or until age 21 years (whichever is longer)
- RF without carditis:
  5 years or until age 21 years (whichever is longer)

INFECTIVE ENDOCARDITIS PROPHYLAXIS IN PATIENTS WITH RHD

- Antibiotic prophylaxis before major dental, oral, respiratory tract, or oesophageal procedures is targeted towards *S viridans*
- Standard general prophylaxis is a single dose *Amoxicillin* 2g orally 30-60 minutes before the procedure.
- If unable to take oral medication, consider a single dose of *Ampicillin*, 2g IV/IM 30-60 minutes before the procedure

- Activity restrictions based on severity of valvular disease

→ Refer to a facility with a cardiologist/cardiothoracic surgeon for definite treatment of the RHD.

iv. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A CARDIOLOGIST OR CARDIOTHORACIC SURGEON

PERCUTANEOUS BALLOON VALVULOPLASTY

Valvuloplasty might become necessary for symptom relief, especially with rheumatic mitral stenosis. American Heart Association (AHA)/American College of Cardiology (ACC) guideline recommendations are as follows:

- Perform percutaneous mitral balloon valvuloplasty (PMBV) for patients with severe mitral stenosis
  Mitral valve area (MVA) <1.5 cm², favourable valve morphology and absence of contraindications such as left atrial thrombus or significant mitral regurgitation (class I)
- Asymptomatic patients with MVA <1.5 cm², pulmonary hypertension (systolic pulmonary pressure >50 mmHg at rest or >60 mmHg with exercise), and favourable valve morphology should also be considered for PMBV (class I)
- Patients with calcific mitral stenosis who are at high risk for surgical commissurotomy should be considered for PMBV when advanced heart failure (NYHA class III-IV) and severe mitral stenosis (MVA <1.5 cm²) are present (class Ia)
- Similar patients who are at lower risk for surgical commissurotomy may also be considered for PMBV (class IIb)
- Symptomatic patients (NYHA class II-IV) with milder stenosis (MVA >1.5 cm²) and pulmonary hypertension may be considered for PMBV (class IIb)
Asymptomatic patients with MVA less than 1.5 cm² with new atrial fibrillation may also be considered for PMBV (class IIb)

Similar recommendations have been made by the European Society of Cardiology. Palliative treatment may be considered in patients who are not suitable candidates for surgery even when valve morphology is not ideal.

**SURGICAL VALVE REPAIR/REPLACEMENT**

Current guidelines limit mitral valve replacement to irreparable valve pathology that will result in poor durability outcomes, especially in patients unlikely to tolerate future reinterventions.

Valve replacement for mitral stenosis (MS) may be considered in patients who are candidates for surgical therapy when the valve is not suitable for valvotomy (either surgical or percutaneous). The recommendations for surgery in patients with mitral stenosis, according to the current ACC/AHA guidelines, are described below:

- Mitral valve surgery (repair if possible) is indicated in patients with symptomatic (New York Heart Association [NYHA] functional class III–IV) moderate or severe MS under any of the following circumstances:
  - Percutaneous mitral balloon valvotomy is unavailable
  - Percutaneous mitral balloon valvotomy is contraindicated because of left atrial thrombus despite anticoagulation or because concomitant moderate to severe mitral regurgitation (MR) is present
  - The valve morphology is not favourable for percutaneous mitral balloon valvotomy in a patient with acceptable operative risk (class I)
  - Symptomatic patients with moderate to severe MS who also have moderate to severe MR should receive mitral valve replacement (MVR) unless valve repair is possible at the time of surgery (class I)
  - Mitral valve replacement is reasonable in patients with severe MS and severe pulmonary hypertension (pulmonary artery systolic pressure >60 mmHg) who have NYHA functional class I–II symptoms and who are not considered candidates for percutaneous mitral balloon valvotomy or surgical mitral valve repair (class IIa)

**5.7.5 PATIENT INFORMATION**

- Counselling: patients should be counselled at diagnosis and prior to discharge on disease condition
- Within 4 weeks of discharge, patient should be reviewed or reassessed
- Patient management should be individualised in relation to comorbidities and disease severity
- Counsel on diuretics, febrile illness and diarrhoeal illness, salt and fluid restriction
- Infective endocarditis prophylaxis be considered and individualised in patients undergoing dental procedures
- Report to the cardiologist once pregnancy occurs; planned pregnancy is preferred with prior cardiologist consult
REFERENCES

5 DISEASES

5.8 INFECTIVE ENDOCARDITIS

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ARF</td>
<td>Acute rheumatic fever</td>
<td>HF</td>
<td>Heart failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASO</td>
<td>Antistreptolysin O</td>
<td>IE</td>
<td>Infective Endocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BUE</td>
<td>Blood urea electrolytes</td>
<td>MI</td>
<td>Myocardial infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHD</td>
<td>Congenital heart disease</td>
<td>NVE</td>
<td>Native valve endocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRP</td>
<td>C-reactive protein</td>
<td>PVE</td>
<td>Prosthetic valve endocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECG</td>
<td>Electrocardiogram</td>
<td>TOE</td>
<td>Transoesophageal echocardiogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>Erythrocyte sedimentation rate</td>
<td>WBC</td>
<td>White blood cell count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAS</td>
<td>Group A Streptococcus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBC</td>
<td>Full blood cell count</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.8.1 INTRODUCTION

i. DEFINITION
Infective endocarditis (IE) is an infection involving the endocardial surface (inner lining) of the heart which may include heart valves and congenital defects. Infections are mainly bacterial and fungal in origin. The process of endocarditis involves infection, inflammation and immune response to the bacteria or fungi. The process of endocarditis leads to the formation of vegetation on the valve or endocardium, which is made up of bacteria/fungi, clots and inflammatory substances. The vegetation can dislodge (embolize) to distant organs like the brain \(^1\).

ii. CLASSIFICATION
IE is classified into five main types
- Native (natural) valve (NVE)
- Prosthetic (artificial) valve endocarditis (PVE)
- Intravenous drug abuse (IVDA) endocarditis
- Fungal endocarditis
- Nosocomial/hospital acquired

iii. RISK FACTORS
- Congenital heart defects
- Rheumatic valvular disease
- Degenerative heart disease including calcific aortic stenosis due to either a bicuspid valve, Marfan’s syndrome or syphilitic disease
- Mitral valve prolapse
- Prosthetic (artificial) valve

Rarely do we have endocarditis involving normal valves.

5.8.2 AETIOLOGY
See table 66: Aetiology of infective endocarditis based on classification on next page.
5.8.3 CLINICAL PRESENTATION

A high index of suspicion (alertness) is required in the diagnosis of infective endocarditis. The clinical presentation (signs and symptoms) of infective endocarditis is highly variable. Presentation depends on the causative organism, the presence or absence of pre-existing cardiac disease, and the presence or absence of prosthetic valves or cardiac devices. Symptoms are therefore commonly non-specific constitutional symptoms (fever, weight loss, joint pains, etc.), symptoms associated with primary cardiac defects, or secondary embolic phenomena.

### i. COMMON SYMPTOMS

- Fever
- Chills
- Anorexia
- Malaise
- Myalgia
- Headache
- Weight loss
- Night sweats
- Dyspnoea
- Chest pain
- Cough
- Joint pains

### ii. SYMPTOMS ASSOCIATED WITH SECONDARY EMBOLIC PHENOMENA

- Symptoms of acute meningitis (fever, severe headache, seizures, photophobia, confusion)
- Focal neurologic complaints (e.g. hemiplegia) due to embolic stroke (infarct or haemorrhage)
- Angina/myocardial infarction
- Back pain associated with vertebral osteomyelitis
- Unilateral blindness
- Painless haematuria

### Table 66: Aetiology of infective endocarditis based on classification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Causative organism</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Native (natural) valve endocarditis (NVE)</td>
<td>Complications arise due to slowly progressive valvular destruction, embolic or immunologic phenomena</td>
<td>Streptococcus spp, S. viridans, S. bovis, Enterococci, Staphylococcus spp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prosthetic (artificial) valve endocarditis (PVE)</td>
<td>A complication of surgery (early or late): Early complication of the surgery (less than a year) runs an aggressive acute course with local abscess, valve dehiscence, and fistula formation resulting in shock, heart failure, emboli and pericardial tamponade Late complication of surgery (&gt;1 year) runs a sub-acute course</td>
<td>Staphylococcus aureus, Corynebacterium, Fungi (candida spp, aspergillus spp), Legionella, Haemophilus spp, Actinobacillus spp, Cardiobacterium hominis, Eikenella corrodens, Kingella kingae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intravenous drug abuse (IVDA) endocarditis</td>
<td>Right-sided endocarditis is the most common presentation, which involves the tricuspid valve, and a murmur is not always present</td>
<td>Staph. aureus, Group A strep, Enterococci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fungal endocarditis</td>
<td>Commonly found in intravenous drug users and intensive care unit patients who receive broad-spectrum antibiotics</td>
<td>Candida spp, Aspergillus spp, blood cultures are usually negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nosocomial (hospital-acquired) endocarditis</td>
<td>A rare complication of nosocomial sepsis usually from intravascular devices e.g. central lines/catheters, peripheral intravenous catheters and intracardiac devices such as pacemakers</td>
<td>Staph. aureus, Enterococci</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Dyspnoea, cough, and chest pain are common complaints of intravenous drug users. This is due to the preponderance of tricuspid valve endocarditis in this group and secondary emboli to the pulmonary vasculature.

### iii. SIGNS
- Fever
- Heart murmurs
- Change in a pre-existing murmur
- Petechiae
- Splinter haemorrhages:
  - dark red linear lesions in the nailbeds
- Janeway lesions:
  - non-tender maculae on the palms and soles
- Osler nodes:
  - tender subcutaneous nodules usually found on the distal pads of the digits
- Roth spots:
  - retinal haemorrhages with small, clear centres (rare)
- Splenomegaly

Other signs include the following:
- Stiff neck
- Paralysis, hemiparesis, aphasia
- Delirium
- Pallor
- Conjunctival haemorrhage
- Crackles
- Pleural friction rub
- Cardiac arrhythmia
- Gallops
- Pericardial rub

### iv. DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA
Diagnosis of infective endocarditis is based on the modified Duke’s criteria which differentiates diagnoses into definite, possible or rejected infective endocarditis.

*Table 67: Major and minor criteria for the diagnosis of infective endocarditis (Adapted from: Li et al.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major and minor criteria for the diagnosis of infective endocarditis</th>
<th>Major criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Two positive blood cultures for organisms typical of endocarditis drawn &gt;12 hours apart</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All of 3 or a majority of 4 or more positive blood cultures (with at least 1 h between first and last culture) for organisms consistent with endocarditis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serologic evidence of Coxiella burnetii (lgG titre &gt; 1:800) or one positive blood culture for Coxiella burnetii</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echocardiographic evidence of endocardial involvement:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oscillating intracardiac mass (vegetation) on a heart valve, on supporting structures, in the path of regurgitant jets, or on implanted material without another anatomic explanation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac abscess</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New dehiscence of prosthetic valve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New valvular regurgitation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Minor criteria</th>
<th>Vascular phenomena:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Predisposing heart disorder</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV drug abuse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fever ≥38.0° C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunologic phenomena:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glomerulonephritis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osler nodes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roth spots</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rheumatoid factor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microbiologic evidence of infection consistent with but not meeting major criteria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serologic evidence of infection with organisms consistent with endocarditis</td>
<td>Arterial embolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Septic pulmonary embolism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycotic aneurysm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intracranial haemorrhage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjunctival petechiae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Janeway lesions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.8.4 MANAGEMENT ACCORDING TO LEVEL OF CARE

i. HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR
The diagnosis of Infective endocarditis in a facility without a doctor may be very difficult. IE should be suspected in a patient with a known heart condition presenting with fever, weight loss and worsening heart failure or any patient who presents with fever, weight loss and no response to antimalarial and antibiotic therapy for >4 days.

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Full blood cell count
- Urine dipstick

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
Oral analgesics/antipyretic in case of fever 1g Paracetamol t.d.s (oral)

➔ Refer to a health facility with a doctor.

ii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR
IE should be suspected in a patient with a known heart condition presenting with fever, weight loss and worsening heart failure or any patient who presents with fever, weight loss and no response to antimalarial and antibiotic therapy for >4 days and a high ESR/CRP.

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Full blood cell count
- Blood cultures: at least three samples containing 10ml of blood each, taken at 30 minutes intervals from a peripheral vein
- Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)
- Urinalysis: proteinuria, microscopic haematuria

---

Table 68: Modified Duke's criteria for infective endocarditis (Adapted from Li et al.3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical diagnostic status</th>
<th>Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Definite endocarditis</td>
<td>One of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- 2 major criteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- 1 major and 3 minor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- 5 minor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possible endocarditis</td>
<td>One of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- 1 major and 1 minor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- 3 minor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endocarditis rejected</td>
<td>One of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(excluded)</td>
<td>- Firm alternative diagnosis explaining the findings of infective endocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Resolution of symptoms and signs after ≤ 4 d of antimicrobial therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- No pathologic evidence of infective endocarditis found during surgery or autopsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Failure to meet the clinical criteria for possible endocarditis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 68: Modified Duke's criteria for infective endocarditis (Adapted from Li et al.3)
PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT

Patients with non-complicated native valve endocarditis (NVE) with normal renal function:

- **Penicillin G, iv (Evidence rating B)**
  - **Adults:** 12-18 million U/day in 4-6 daily doses (or continuous infusion) for 2 weeks
  - **Children:** 200,000 U/kg/day in 4-6 doses for 2 weeks
  - or

- **Ceftriaxone, iv or im (Evidence rating B)**
  - **Adults:** 2g/day in 1 dose for 2 weeks
  - **Children:** 100mg/kg/day in 1 dose for 2 weeks
  - with

- **Gentamycin, iv or im (Evidence rating B)**
  - **Adults:** 3mg/kg/day in 1 dose for 2 weeks
  - **Children:** 3mg/kg/day in 1 dose or 3 equally divided doses for 2 weeks

➤ **Patients ≥65 years or with impaired renal or VIII (Vestibulocochlear) cranial nerve dysfunction:**
  - avoid Gentamycin

- **Penicillin G, iv (Evidence rating B)**
  - **Adults:** 12-18 million U/day in 4-6 daily doses (or continuous infusion) for 4 weeks
  - **Children:** 200,000 U/kg/day in 4-6 daily doses for 4 weeks
  - or

- **Ceftriaxone, iv or im (Evidence rating B)**
  - **Adults:** 2g/day in 1 dose for 4 weeks
  - **Children:** 100mg/kg/day in 1 dose for 4 weeks

➤ **NB:** A 6-week therapy is recommended for patients with prosthetic valve endocarditis (PVE)

Beta-lactam (Penicillin) allergic patients:

- **Vancomycin, iv (Evidence rating C)**
  - **Adults:** 30mg/kg/day in 2 doses for 4 weeks
  - **Children:** 40mg/kg/day in 2 or 3 equally divided doses for 4 weeks

➤ **NB:** A 6-week therapy is recommended for patients with PVE

Patients with strains relatively resistant to Penicillin (MIC 0.250–2mg/l):

- **Penicillin G, iv (Evidence rating B)**
  - **Adults:** 24 million U/day in 4-6 daily doses (or continuous infusion) for 4 weeks
  - or

- **Ceftriaxone, iv or im (Evidence rating B)**
  - **Adults:** 2g/day in 1 dose for 4 weeks
  - with

- **Gentamycin, iv or im (Evidence rating B)**
  - **Adults:** 3mg/kg/day in 1 dose for 2 weeks

For strains relatively resistant to Penicillin (MIC 0.250–2mg/l) in Beta-lactam allergic patients:

- **Vancomycin, iv (Evidence rating C)**
  - **Adults:** 30mg/kg/day in 2 doses for 4 weeks
  - **Children:** 40mg/kg/day in 2 or 3 equally divided doses for 4 weeks
with
- Gentamycin, iv or im (Evidence rating C)
  - Adults: 3mg/kg/day in 1 dose for 2 weeks
  - Children: 3mg/kg/day in 1 dose or 3 equally divided doses for 2 weeks

➔ Refer all cases of infective endocarditis to physician specialist.
➔ Refer all cases of complicated infective endocarditis to cardiologist/cardiothoracic surgeon.

iii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Full blood cell count
- Blood cultures: at least three samples containing 10ml of blood each, taken at 30 minutes intervals from a peripheral vein
- Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)
- Urinalysis- proteinuria, microscopic haematuria

NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Echocardiography
- Chest X-ray

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
Patients with non-complicated native valve endocarditis (NVE) with normal renal function:
- Penicillin G, iv (Evidence rating B)
  - Adults: 12-18 million U/day in 4-6 daily doses (or continuous infusion) for 2 weeks
  - Children: 200,000 U/kg/day in 4-6 doses for 2 weeks
or
- Ceftriaxone, iv or im (Evidence rating B)
  - Adults: 2g/day in 1 dose for 2 weeks
  - Children: 100mg/kg/day in 1 dose for 2 weeks
with
- Gentamycin, iv or im (Evidence rating B)
  - Adults: 3mg/kg/day in 1 dose for 2 weeks
  - Children: 3mg/kg/day in 1 dose or 3 equally divided doses for 2 weeks

➔ Patients ≥65 years or with impaired renal or VIII (vestibulocochlear) cranial nerve dysfunction:
  - avoid Gentamycin

- Penicillin G, iv (Evidence rating B)
  - Adults: 12-18 million U/day in 4-6 doses (or continuous infusion) for 4 weeks
  - Children: 200,000 U/kg/day in 4-6 doses for 4 weeks
or
- Ceftriaxone, iv or im (Evidence rating B)
  - Adults: 2g/day in 1 dose for 4 weeks
  - Children: 100 mg/kg/day in 1 dose for 4 weeks

➔ NB: A 6-week therapy is recommended for patients with prosthetic valve endocarditis (PVE).
Beta-lactam (Penicillin) allergic patients:
- Vancomycin, iv (Evidence rating C)
  - Adults: 30mg/kg/day in 2 doses for 4 weeks
  - Children: 40mg/kg/day in 2 or 3 equally divided doses for 4 weeks

➔ NB: A 6-week therapy is recommended for patients with PVE.

Patients with strains relatively resistant to penicillin (MIC 0.250–2mg/l):
- Penicillin G, iv (Evidence rating B)
  - Adults: 24 million U/day in 4-6 doses (or continuous infusion) for 4 weeks
  or
- Ceftriaxone, iv or im (Evidence rating B)
  - Adults: 2g/day in 1 dose for 4 weeks
  with
- Gentamycin, iv or im (Evidence rating B)
  - Adults: 3mg/kg/day in 1 dose for 2 weeks

For strains resistant to Penicillin (MIC 0.250–2mg/l) in Beta-lactam allergic patients:
- Vancomycin, iv (Evidence rating C)
  - Adults: 30mg/kg/day in 2 doses for 4 weeks
  - Children: 40mg/kg/day in 2 or 3 equally divided doses for 4 weeks
  with
- Gentamycin, iv or im (Evidence rating C)
  - Adults: 3mg/kg/day in 1 dose for 2 weeks
  - Children: 3mg/kg/day in 1 dose or 3 equally divided doses for 2 weeks

➔ Refer all cases of complicated infective endocarditis to a centre with cardiothoracic surgical facilities.

---

**Table 69: Indications for surgery**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indications for surgery</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heart failure</strong></td>
<td>Aortic or mitral NVE or PVE with severe acute regurgitation, obstruction or fistula causing refractory pulmonary oedema or cardiogenic shock&lt;br&gt;Aortic or mitral NVE or PVE with severe regurgitation or obstruction causing symptoms of HF or echocardiographic signs of poor haemodynamic tolerance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Uncontrolled infection</strong></td>
<td>Locally uncontrolled infection (abscess, false aneurysm, fistula, enlarging vegetation)&lt;br&gt;Infection caused by fungi or multi-resistant organisms&lt;br&gt;Persistent positive blood cultures despite appropriate antibiotic therapy and adequate control of septic metastatic foci&lt;br&gt;PVE caused by staphylococci or non-HACEK gram-negative bacteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prevention of embolism</strong></td>
<td>Aortic or mitral NVE or PVE with persistent moderate size vegetation (10mm) after one or more embolic episode despite appropriate antibiotic therapy&lt;br&gt;Aortic or mitral NVE with moderate size vegetation (10mm) associated with severe valve stenosis or regurgitation, and low operative risk&lt;br&gt;Aortic or mitral NVE or PVE with isolated very large vegetations (30mm)&lt;br&gt;Aortic or mitral NVE or PVE with isolated large vegetations (15mm) and no other indication for surgery&lt;br&gt;HACEK = Haemophilus spp, Actinobacillus spp, Cardiobacterium spp., Eikenella spp., Kingella spp.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.8.5 COMPLICATIONS
Cardiac
- Myocardial infarction
- Pericarditis
- Cardiac arrhythmia
- Cardiac valvular insufficiency
- Congestive heart failure
- Sinus of Valsalva aneurysm
- Aortic root or myocardial abscesses
- Arterial emboli, infarcts, mycotic aneurysms

Extra-cardiac
- Arthritis, myositis
- Glomerulonephritis
- Acute renal failure
- Stroke syndromes
- Mesenteric or splenic abscess or infarct

5.8.6 PREVENTION
Antibiotic prophylaxis should not routinely be prescribed for:
- Patients undergoing dental procedures.
- Patients undergoing non-dental procedures at the following sites:
  - Gastrointestinal tract
  - Genitourinary tract (including urological, gynaecological and obstetric procedures, and childbirth)
  - Respiratory tract (including ear, nose and throat procedures and bronchoscopy)  

→ Antibiotic prophylaxis is recommended only for the highest risk patients during certain high risk procedures.

Cardiac conditions at highest risk of infective endocarditis for which preventive treatment should be considered when a high-risk procedure is performed are:
- Patients with any prosthetic valve, including a transcatheter valve, or those in whom any prosthetic material was used for cardiac repair
- Patients with previous episode of IE
- Patients with congenital heart disease (CHD)
- Any type of CHD repaired with a prosthetic material, whether placed surgically or by percutaneous techniques, up to 6 months after the procedure or lifelong if residual shunt or valvular regurgitation remains.
**Table 70:** Recommendations for prophylaxis of infective endocarditis in the highest-risk patients according to the type of at-risk procedure (Adapted from the 2015 ESC Guidelines for the management of infective endocarditis)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk Score</th>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>Level of evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Dental Procedures** | Antibiotic prophylaxis should only be considered for dental procedures requiring manipulation of the gingival or periapical region of the teeth or perforation of the oral mucosa  
Antibiotic prophylaxis is NOT recommended for local anaesthetic injections in non-infected tissues, treatment of superficial caries, removal of sutures, dental X-rays, placement or adjustment of removable prosthodontic or orthodontic appliances or braces or following the shedding of deciduous teeth or trauma to the lips and oral mucosa | C                 |
| **Respiratory tract procedures** | Antibiotic prophylaxis is NOT recommended for respiratory tract procedures, including bronchoscopy or laryngoscopy, or transnasal or endotracheal intubation  
Patients who undergo an invasive respiratory tract procedure to treat an established infection (i.e. drainage of an abscess) should receive an antibiotic regimen that contains an anti-staphylococcal drug | C                 |
| **Gastrointestinal or urogenital procedures or TOE** | Antibiotic prophylaxis is NOT recommended for gastroscopy, colonoscopy, cystoscopy, vaginal or caesarean delivery or TOE  
In the case of an established infection or if antibiotic therapy is indicated to prevent wound infection or sepsis associated with a gastrointestinal or genitourinary tract procedure in patients, it is recommended that the antibiotic regimen includes an agent active against enterococci | C                 |
| **Skin and soft tissue procedures** | Antibiotic prophylaxis is not recommended for any procedure  
For patients undergoing surgical procedures involving infected skin (including oral abscesses), skin structure or musculoskeletal tissue, it is advised that the therapeutic regimen contains an agent active against staphylococci and beta-haemolytic streptococci | C                 |
| **Cardiac and vascular procedures** | Perioperative prophylaxis is recommended before placement of a pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator  
Perioperative antibiotic prophylaxis should be considered in patients undergoing surgical or transcatheter implantation of a prosthetic valve, intravascular prosthetic or other foreign material | C                 |

**Table 71:** Recommended prophylaxis regimen for high-risk dental procedures in high risk patients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical situation</th>
<th>Antibiotic</th>
<th>Single-dose 30–60 minutes before procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Adults</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No allergy to Penicillin</td>
<td>Amoxicillin or Ceftriaxone</td>
<td>2g orally or iv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1g iv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allergy to Penicillin</td>
<td>Clindamycin</td>
<td>600mg orally or iv</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
OTHER PREVENTIVE MEASURES

Although antibiotic prophylaxis is not recommended for patients at intermediate risk of IE, i.e. any other form of native valve disease (including the most commonly identified conditions such as bicuspid aortic valve, mitral valve prolapse and calcific aortic stenosis), both intermediate- and high-risk patients should be advised on the importance of dental and skin hygiene. These measures of general hygiene apply to patients and healthcare workers and should ideally be applied to the general population, as IE can occur without known cardiac disease.

Recommended general hygiene measures include

- Strict dental and skin hygiene; dental follow-up should be performed twice a year in high-risk patients and yearly in the others
- Disinfection of wounds
- Curative antibiotics for any focus of bacterial infection
- No self-medication with antibiotics
- Strict infection control measures for any at-risk procedure
- Discourage piercing and tattooing
- Limit the use of infusion catheters and invasive procedure when possible. Favour peripheral over central catheters, and systematic replacement of the peripheral catheter every 3-4 days; strict adherence to care bundles for central and peripheral cannulae should be performed

5.8.7 PATIENT INFORMATION/EDUCATION

- Patients should be educated about the symptoms and signs of IE after discharge
- Patients should be informed that IE could recur and that new onset of fever, chills or other signs of infection mandate immediate evaluation, including procurement of blood cultures before empirical use of antibiotics
- Patients should be advised to attend regular clinical and echocardiographic follow-up during the first year following completion of treatment
- Patients should also be educated on good oral health maintenance, preventive dentistry and advised about skin hygiene, including tattoos and skin piercing.
REFERENCES


## 5 DISEASES

### 5.9 CARDIAC ARRHYTHMIAS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AF</td>
<td>Atrial fibrillation</td>
<td>HR</td>
<td>Heart rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BP</td>
<td>Blood pressure</td>
<td>INR</td>
<td>International normalised ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bpm</td>
<td>beats per minute</td>
<td>LOE</td>
<td>Level of evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPR</td>
<td>Cardiopulmonary resuscitation</td>
<td>SVT</td>
<td>Supraventricular tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Computed tomography</td>
<td>VF</td>
<td>Ventricular fibrillation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECG</td>
<td>Electrocardiography</td>
<td>VT</td>
<td>Ventricular tachycardia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.9.1 INTRODUCTION

i. DEFINITION
Arrhythmias are abnormal heart rate or rhythm. This definition includes an increase in the rate of occurrence of impulses (tachyarrhythmias), a decrease in the rate of occurrence of electrical impulses (bradyarrhythmias) or a change in the normal rhythm of impulses. The commonest form of arrhythmia worldwide is atrial fibrillation.

ii. EPIDEMIOLOGY
Atrial fibrillation, the commonest and most persistent form of cardiac arrhythmia was shown to affect 33.5 million people worldwide (20.9 million males and 12.6 million females) in the year 2010. Ventricular arrhythmias include a spectrum that ranges from premature ventricular complex (PVC) to ventricular fibrillation (VF). Incidence and prevalence of ventricular arrhythmias has been shown to increase with age and in the presence of structural heart disease.

iii. CLASSIFICATION OF ARRHYTHMIAS

5.9.2 AETIOLOGY
Arrhythmias could arise from both cardiac and non-cardiac causes. These include:

Table 72: Causes of arrhythmias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardiac causes</th>
<th>Non-cardiac causes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Myocardial infarction</td>
<td>Hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rheumatic heart disease and other valvular heart diseases</td>
<td>Thyroid dysfunction (hypo- and hyperthyroidism)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ischaemic heart disease</td>
<td>Alcoholism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiomyopathies</td>
<td>Smoking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-cardiac surgery</td>
<td>Drugs (beta 2 agonists, L- Dopa, Digoxin, Doxorubicin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pericardial disease</td>
<td>Electrolyte imbalance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myocarditis</td>
<td>Metabolic imbalance (hypoxia, hypercapnia, acidosis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infiltrative heart diseases</td>
<td>Pulmonary embolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channelopathies (e.g. Brugada syndrome and Long-QT Syndrome)</td>
<td>Pneumonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Physiologic causes: Sleep, exercise, anaemia, fever, changes in autonomic tone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note: Sinus arrhythmias are due to fluctuations of autonomic tone during respiration, resulting in phasic changes of the sinus discharge rate (acceleration and deceleration). This variation is normal, particularly in children and young adults and typically results in predictable irregularities of the pulse. Hence non-pathological or of no clinical relevance.

5.9.3 CLINICAL PRESENTATION
Patients may have arrhythmias without symptoms. Relevant symptoms usually occur as a result of haemodynamic compromise/instability.

i. SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

Table 73: Symptoms and signs of cardiac arrhythmias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>Signs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Palpitations</td>
<td>Pulse rate abnormalities (tachycardia or bradycardia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dizziness</td>
<td>Rhythm irregularities e.g. atrial fibrillation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shortness of breath</td>
<td>Diaphores</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest pain</td>
<td>Hypotension (low blood pressure)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light-headedness/feeling faint</td>
<td>Signs of heart failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of consciousness</td>
<td>Signs of structural heart disease: heaves, thrills, murmurs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seizures</td>
<td>Altered mental state (restlessness, agitation, confusion, unresponsiveness)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fatigue</td>
<td>Absent central or peripheral pulse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.9.4 BASIC INVESTIGATION ACCORDING TO LEVEL OF CARE

i. HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR
Health facility without a doctor usually do not have ECG machine or the interpretation of ECG is difficult. Hence, any patient suspected of SIGNIFICANT arrhythmia (tachycardia or bradycardia) from clinical examination should be referred as soon as possible.

Refer if diagnosis of arrhythmia is suspected; do not delay referral if ECG is not readily available.

ii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR:
- 12-lead ECG (LOE A)
- Serum electrolytes, calcium, magnesium assay (LOE C)
- Chest Xray
- Full blood count

iii. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST
- ECG
- Full blood count
- ESR/CRP
- Serum electrolytes, calcium, magnesium assay (LOE C)
- Chest X-ray
- Thyroid function test, particularly, thyroxin stimulating hormone (TSH) (LOE C)
- Serum cardiac enzyme levels particularly troponins and CK-MB during acute episodes
- Arterial blood gases (ABG) if available
iv. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A CARDIOLOGIST
- Echocardiography to detect valvular and other structural abnormalities (LOE B)
- Holter monitoring (ambulatory ECG) (LOE B)
- Exercise stress test
- Coronary angiogram

5.9.5 TACHYARRHYTHMIAS: GENERAL OVERVIEW
Life-threatening tachyarrhythmia may present at any facility. The most important aspect of care is to determine whether this patient is in danger. Diagnosis and management of life-threatening arrhythmias depend on the level of care (availability of diagnostic tools, drugs and expertise of attending clinician). Figure 26 shows the algorithm for the management of patient with significant tachyarrhythmia.

i. MANAGEMENT ACCORDING TO LEVEL OF CARE

ia. HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR
➔ Refer if diagnosis of SYMPTOMATIC arrhythmia is suspected.
➔ Identify and treat reversible causes of arrhythmia while awaiting referral (see table 75)

Table 74: Management of reversible causes of arrhythmia in health facility without a doctor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reversible Cause</th>
<th>Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Hypoxia                | ▪ Check and maintain airway (prop up in bed, perform jaw thrust and chin lift, oropharyngeal airway, if available, etc.)
                          | ▪ Check oxygenation and ventilation                                          |
                          | ▪ Administer oxygen                                                         |
| Hypovolaemia           | Replace blood or fluid loss with: Crystalloid (e.g. normal saline, Ringer’s lactate) |
| Hypo-/Hyperthermia     | Hypothermia:
                          | ▪ Warmed intravenous fluids                                                  |
                          | ▪ Warm blankets                                                             |
                          | Hyperthermia:
                          | ▪ Cooling blankets                                                          |
                          | ▪ Tepid sponging                                                            |
                          | ▪ Cooling packs/wet towel application to head, axilla, groin                 |
| Toxins/Medications     | ▪ Activated charcoal (within 1 hour of ingestion)                            |
                          | ▪ Supportive measures ABCDE                                                  |

ib. HEALTH FACILITY WITH DOCTOR

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
- Serum electrolytes, calcium, magnesium assay (LOE C)
- Full blood cell count

OTHER INVESTIGATION
- 12-lead electrocardiography (LOE A)
- Chest X-ray

See next page for table 75: Management of reversible causes of cardiac arrhythmias in health facility with a doctor.
Table 75: Management of reversible causes of cardiac arrhythmias in health facility with a doctor
(Adapted from Liverpool Hospital ICU Guideline on Management of Arrhythmias)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reversible Cause</th>
<th>Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Acidosis (Respiratory/metabolic/renal) | ▪ Adequate hydration  
▪ Treat the underlying cause:  
  Metabolic: e.g. diabetic ketoacidosis: give insulin, hydrate  
  Renal: e.g. acute kidney injury: hydrate, dialysis  
  Respiratory: e.g. severe asthma/COPD or pneumonia: ventilation with a self-inflating mask, non-invasive ventilation, mechanical ventilation  
▪ Administer sodium bicarbonate (50-100ml of 8.4% NaHCO₃ intermittently)  
Consider if acidosis persists despite the treatment outlined above |
| Hypokalaemia or hyperkalaemia     | ▪ Hypokalaemia (from diuretics, GI loss): hydrate, administer iv potassium chloride (KCL) 40-120mmol slowly over 24 hours; ideally using a perfuser  
▪ Hyperkalaemia  
  ▪ Give 10mls of 10% Ca gluconate  
  ▪ iv 10 IU soluble Insulin in 50ml of 50% glucose (or in 250ml of 10% glucose)  
  ▪ Nebulized Salbutamol 10mg |

Other reversible causes include pulmonary embolism, myocardial infarction, cardiac tamponade

ic. HEALTH FACILITY WITH A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION
▪ Serum electrolytes, calcium, magnesium assay (LOE C)  
▪ Full blood cell count  
▪ TSH  
▪ Troponins, especially CK-MB  
▪ ABG (if available)  
▪ Further investigation to be requested by cardiologist

OTHER INVESTIGATION
▪ 12-lead ECG (LOE A)  
▪ Chest X-ray
Assess appropriateness for clinical condition
Heart rate typically ≥150/min for significant tachyarrhythmia

Identify and treat underlying cause
- Maintain patient airway; assist breathing as necessary
- Oxygen (if oxygen saturation <94%)
- Cardiac monitor to identify rhythm; monitor blood

Persistent tachyarrhythmia causing:
- Hypotension?
- Acutely altered mental status?
- Signs of shock?
- Ischaemic chest discomfort?
- Acute heart failure?

Synchronized cardioversion
- Consider sedation
- If regular narrow complex, consider Adenosine*

WIDE QRS?
> 0.12

IV access and 12-lead ECG if available.
- Vagal manoeuvres
- Adenosine* (if regular)
- Beta-blocker or calcium channel blocker
- Consider expert consultation

YES

NO

IV access and 12-lead ECG if available.
- Consider Adenosine* only if regular and monomorphic
- Consider antiarrhythmic infusion.
- Consider expert consultation

DOSES/DETAILS

Synchronised cardioversion
Initial recommended dose:
- Narrow regular: 50–100 J
- Narrow irregular: 120–200 J biphasic or 200 J monophasic
- Wide regular: 100 J
- Wide irregular: defibrillation dose

Adenosine* iv dose
First dose:
6mg rapid iv push; follow with normal saline flush
Second dose:
12mg if required; further 12mg if no effect

Antiarrhythmic infusions for stable wide-QRS tachycardia
Procainamide* iv dose:
20–50 mg/min until arrhythmia is suppressed, hypotension ensues, QRS duration increases >50%, or maximum dose 17mg/kg given.
Maintenance infusion:
1–4 mg/min
Avoid if prolonged QT or CHF

Amiodarone* iv dose
First dose:
150mg over 10 minutes
Repeat as needed if VT recurs; follow by maintenance infusion of 1 mg/min for first 6 hours

Sotalol* iv dose
100mg (1.5mg/kg) over 5 minutes
Avoid if prolonged QT

Figure 26: Tachycardia algorithm
ii. ATRIAL FIBRILLATION

iiia. CLINICAL PRESENTATION

- Palpation of the pulse as a basic screening tool may help detect AF.
- The pulse is characteristically described as being “irregularly irregular” (in both volume and rhythm).
- A definitive diagnosis of AF requires rhythm documentation using an ECG showing a typical pattern of no discernible, distinct P waves and irregular RR interval (figure 27).

![Figure 27: Atrial fibrillation](image)

iiib. CLASSIFICATION (ALL LEVELS)

Atrial fibrillation can be classified into five groups based on the pattern (table 76):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AF pattern</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First diagnosed</td>
<td>Prior diagnosis of AF has not been made, irrespective of duration of symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxysmal</td>
<td>Typically, self-limiting- resolves within 48 hours or may persist up to 7 days (includes atrial fibrillation cardioverted within one week of onset)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persistent</td>
<td>Episode lasts longer than 7 days. Includes episodes terminated by cardioversion after ≥7 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longstanding persistent</td>
<td>Continuous AF lasting for ≥1 year when a decision is made to adopt a rhythm control strategy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>AF accepted by both patient and physician hence rhythm control not pursued. A decision to adopt a rhythm control strategy converts it to a “Longstanding persistent AF”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 76: Classification of atrial fibrillation (Adapted from The ESC Guideline on Atrial Fibrillation, 2016)

iiic. MANAGEMENT OF STABLE ATRIAL FIBRILLATION

HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR/WITH A DOCTOR

➔ Refer if diagnosis is suspected.
➔ Do ECG where available
➔ Identify and treat reversible causes (refer to table 74)

HEALTH FACILITY WITH A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST

This involves:
A. Identification and treatment of precipitating factors (e.g. thyrotoxicosis, sepsis, or postoperative AF) and underlying cardiovascular conditions
B. Anticoagulation
C. Rate control
D. Rhythm control

IDENTIFICATION OF PRECIPITATING FACTORS

➔ Refer to table 75.
ANTICOAGULATION (STROKE PREVENTION THERAPY, LEVEL OF EVIDENCE A)

- Anticoagulation is mandatory in valvular AF (i.e. AF with moderate-severe mitral stenosis and in those who had mitral valve repair or mechanical or bioprosthetic heart valve).
- The need for anticoagulation in patients with non-valvular AF should be determined using the CHA2DS2VASc score (table 77).

→ Give anticoagulant if CHA2DS2VASc score is \( \geq 1 \)

Table 77: The CHA2DS2VASc score for stroke risk prediction\(^4\) of anticoagulant therapy (LEVEL A)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHA2DS2VASc, Risk factor</th>
<th>Points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Congestive heart failure (signs and symptoms or evidence of reduced LVEF)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age &gt;75 years</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes mellitus</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous stroke, TIA</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vascular disease</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age 65-74 years</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sex category (female)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum score</td>
<td>9 points</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After the need for anticoagulation is determined, it is important to assess bleeding risk using the HAS-BLED score (table 78) prior to commencement of anticoagulant therapy (LEVEL A).

Table 78: The HAS-BLED bleeding risk score\(^5\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Clinical characteristic</th>
<th>Points awarded</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Abnormal renal and liver function (1 point each)</td>
<td>1 or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Stroke</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Bleeding tendency or predisposition</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Labile INRs (if taking vitamin K antagonists)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Elderly (e.g. age &gt;65, frail condition)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Drugs (concomitant Aspirin, NSAID) or alcohol</td>
<td>1 or 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum</td>
<td></td>
<td>9 points</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE:
→ A high HAS-BLED score (\( \geq 3 \)) is not an indication for withholding anticoagulant therapy in patients in whom it is indicated (CHA2DS2VASc, \( \geq 1 \) in males/\( \geq 2 \) in females or in patients with mitral stenosis).
→ Rather, such high-risk patients require regular review and cautious anticoagulation.
→ Manipulation of modifiable risk factors for bleeding such as hypertension, drugs and alcohol intake may reduce bleeding risk in such patients and hence enable anticoagulant therapy commencement.
PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT

**CONSIDERATIONS FOR ANTICOAGULANT THERAPY**

- **Warfarin** use requires monitoring of INR. Target INR is between 2-3 and during initiation of therapy, INR should be determined on the third day after initiation of the Warfarin, with dose modification until target is reached, after which INR monitoring can be done every two months.
- The Novel Oral Anticoagulants (NOACs) have a less risk of bleeding and do not require INR monitoring.
- Renal function should be evaluated before commencement of NOAC therapy.

**RATE CONTROL**

**ACUTE RATE CONTROL**

This can be achieved in atrial fibrillation with very fast ventricular response using one of the following medication in *Table 80*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug Group</th>
<th>Drug (route)</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Beta-blockers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metoprolol (iv)</td>
<td></td>
<td>5mg over 1-2 minutes every 5 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esmolol* (iv)</td>
<td></td>
<td>500mcg/kg over 1 minute, then 50mcg/kg/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium channel blockers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verapamil (iv)</td>
<td></td>
<td>5-10mg (0.075–0.15mg/kg) over 2 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diltiazem* (iv)</td>
<td></td>
<td>20mg (0.35mg/kg) bolus over 2 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cardiac glycosides</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digoxin (iv)</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.5mg iv loading, then 0.25mg 6 hourly twice, followed by once daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LONG-TERM RATE CONTROL**

For long term rate control of AF, the following medication could be used (*Table 81*) to achieve a target HR of <110bpm.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug Group</th>
<th>Drug (oral)</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
<th>Level of evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Beta-blockers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bisoprolol</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.25 – 20mg daily</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metoprolol</td>
<td></td>
<td>25–200mg daily (oral)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carvedilol</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.125–50mg twice daily</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nebivolol*</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.5-10mg daily</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atenolol</td>
<td></td>
<td>25–100mg daily (oral)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Calcium channel blockers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verapamil</td>
<td></td>
<td>40–120mg 6–8 hourly (oral)(max 480mg)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diltiazem*</td>
<td></td>
<td>60mg tds or 120–360mg daily as modified release (max 360mg)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cardiac glycosides</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digoxin</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0625–0.25mg (oral)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
iii. ATRIAL FLUTTER
Atrial flutter is a cardiac arrhythmia characterized by atrial rate of 240-400bpm and some degree of atrioventricular node conduction block. Causes include Structural heart diseases especially post-surgery, hypertensive heart disease and ischaemic heart disease.

HEALTH FACILITIES WITHOUT A DOCTOR
Diagnosis of Atrial flutter may be difficult in a facility without a doctor because ECG may not be available and interpretation of ECG may be difficult.
➔ A patient suspected of having arrhythmia or atrial flutter should be referred to a facility with a doctor.

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
➔ Refer if diagnosis is suspected.
➔ Identify and treat reversible causes (refer to table 74)

HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR/PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST
INVESTIGATION
- Pulse is usually regular and rapid on palpation
- ECG: shows “saw-toothed” flutter (p) waves especially in the inferior leads (II, III, aVf) with RR intervals which are usually regular (figure 28)
➔ May come with 2:1, 3:1, 4:1 or variable block.
➔ May be confused with atrial fibrillation and is often initiated by a brief episode of atrial tachycardia or by AF.

Figure 28: Atrial flutter on an ECG showing regular RR intervals and saw-toothed P waves

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
➔ Refer to treatment of AF.
iv. MANAGEMENT OF PAROXYSMAL SUPRAVENTRICULAR TACHYCARDIA
A narrow complex tachycardia that arises from the atria or AV node with an abrupt onset or termination.

CLINICAL PRESENTATION
- Regular HR approximately 140-280 bpm
- Usually narrow QRS complex <120 ms
- P waves may be absent or if visible may be inverted or buried in the QRS complex or come after the QRS complex (figure 29)

Figure 29: ECG showing supraventricular tachycardia

NON-PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
If haemodynamically stable for all levels:
- Vagal manoeuvres such as carotid sinus massage, valsala manoeuvre may help abort the arrhythmia (LOE B).
- Patients should be referred to the cardiologist for assessment and long-term management (LOE C).

Steps for the performance of the modified vasalva maneuver
- Explain procedure to patient
- With patient approval, place patient in a semi-recumbent position
- Ask patient to blow into a 10ml syringe hard enough to shift plunger for 15 seconds while in semi-recumbent position
- Patient is made to lie supine or head end of bed is flattened immediately after the strain while passively elevating both lower limbs at the same time
- Patient should maintain this position for 15 seconds

HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
- None recommended, refer to health facility with a doctor.

HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR
- Treat reversible causes refer to table 75
- Vagal manoeuvre as above

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
Options available include:
- iv Adenosine
- iv Verapamil
- iv Diltiazem
- iv Beta-blocker
- Refer to cardiologist for further assessment and management.
HEALTH FACILITY WITH A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST

➔ Attempt vagal manoeuvre

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
Options available include:

- iv Adenosine® or
- iv Verapamil or
- iv Diltiazem® or
- iv Beta-blocker

➔ Refer to cardiologist for further assessment and management.

v. MANAGEMENT OF VENTRICULAR TACHYARRHYTHMIA IN STABLE PATIENTS

Ventricular tachycardia (VT) is a broad complex tachycardia arising from either the right or left ventricle. It is said to be slow VT when the rate is <150 bpm and fast when >180 bpm. However, the haemodynamic compromise is the best determinant of how severe the VT is but not the heart rate. Figure 30 shows an ECG with VT. It is the most common form of broad complex tachycardia with increased risk of morbidity and mortality.

INVESTIGATION

- ECG
  A diagnosis of VT is supported by the presence of:
  - AV dissociation
  - QRS complex >0.14s
  - Monophasic R wave in lead aVR
  - Absence of an RS complex in all precordial leads
  - RS interval >100 ms in at least 1 precordial lead

Figure 30: ECG of ventricular tachycardia
HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR
➔ Refer to health facility with a doctor/physician specialist.

HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR/PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT
Useful medications in management of VT are summarised in the table 82. Figure 31 shows the algorithm for the management of ventricular tachycardia.

Table 82: Useful medications in acute management of VT and their indications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent</th>
<th>Indication(s) for use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Beta-blocker:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metoprolol</td>
<td>Heart failure with reduced left ventricular ejection fraction; (reduces risk of sudden cardiac death)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esmolol*</td>
<td>Polymorphic VT due to myocardial ischaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carvedilol</td>
<td>Recent MI with VT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Procainamide</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sotalol</strong></td>
<td>Stable patients with monomorphic VT and normal LV function; (NB: Procainamide* may further prolong QT interval and lead to torsades de pointes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lidocaine</strong></td>
<td>Polymorphic VT with:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>§ QT prolongation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>§ Ongoing MI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>§ Cardiac arrest unresponsive to defibrillation and may increase overall mortality; harmful if given as prophylaxis for VT in acute MI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amiodarone</strong></td>
<td>Haemodynamically unstable VT persisting after maximal energy shock; in combination with Beta-blocker for VT with left ventricular dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Magnesium sulphate</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 82: Useful medications in acute management of VT and their indications

Figure 31: Algorithm for the management of ventricular tachycardia
For VT that does not terminate with cardioversion or antiarrhythmic medication, catheter ablation is recommended, hence, immediate referral to a cardiologist.

CPR according to the Advanced Cardiac Life Support (ACLS) protocol should be administered in patients who develop cardiac arrest.

Refer patient to cardiologist for post-stabilisation management.

vi. MANAGEMENT OF VENTRICULAR FIBRILLATION HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR/PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST

Ventricular fibrillation is a rapid, grossly irregular ventricular activity with marked variability in electrocardiographic waveform (AHA 2017). Ventricular rate is usually > 300 bpm. The disorganised excitation and irregular ventricular contractions result in heart failure and rapidly progress to cardiac arrest and ultimately death.

NON-LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

ECG (figure 32)

Findings on a 12-lead ECG suggestive of ventricular fibrillation include:
- Irregular waves which are coarse initially but flatten out as the arrhythmia progresses and heart failure worsens
- Shapeless rapid oscillations

TREATMENT

Begin CPR immediately.

Refer to figure 7 on page 52: Advance Cardiac Life Support (ACLS) Algorithm.
5.9.6 BRADYARRHYTHMIAS

i. SINUS BRADYCARDIA

General description:

Figure 33: ECG showing sinus bradycardia

→ This may be due to sinus node dysfunction or external influences (such as Beta-blockers, hypothyroidism) on a relatively normal sinus node.

AETIOLOGY

Extrinsic: hypothermia, hypothyroidism, cholestatic jaundice and raised intracranial pressure, drugs (Beta-blockers, digitalis and other anti-arrhythmic drugs) and neurally mediated causes (carotid sinus syndrome, vasovagal syndrome etc.)

Intrinsic: Acute ischaemia and infarction of the sinus node, fibrosis of the atrium and sinus node (sick sinus syndrome)

ii. ATRIOVENTRICULAR BLOCK

First degree:

→ This is seen as prolonged PR interval (>0.20s or 5 small boxes) on ECG (figure 34)

Figure 34: ECG showing prolonged PR interval in first degree heart block

Second degree:

→ This occurs when some atrial impulses fail to reach the ventricles (figure 35)

Figure 35: ECG showing second degree heart block
Third degree:
➔ Complete dissociation between P wave and QRS complex, also known as complete heart block *(figure 36)*

**DIAGNOSIS**
➔ A history of symptoms as mentioned above with pulse rate <60 bpm on examination.
➔ A detailed physical examination should be carried out to detect signs of possible underlying disease.

**TREATMENT IN GENERAL**
Treatment objectives include restoration of sinus rhythm where possible, and prevention of complications. Treatment is indicated if patient is haemodynamically unstable with symptoms and signs of inadequate perfusion (hypotension, altered mental status, signs of shock, ongoing ischaemic chest pain) and evidence of acute pulmonary oedema.

**HEALTH FACILITY WITHOUT A DOCTOR**

**NON-PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT**
- Nurse propped up (bed at 30° to the horizontal)
- Give oxygen if hypoxic or cyanotic
- Provide warmth
- Initiate CPR if haemodynamically unstable
➔ Prompt referral.

**HEALTH FACILITY WITH A DOCTOR/PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST**
- Nurse propped up (bed at 30° to the horizontal)
- Give oxygen if hypoxic or cyanotic
- Provide warmth
- Initiate CPR if haemodynamically unstable
- Investigate and treat underlying cause
- Administer atropine, cautiously (500mcg up to 3mg) iv
➔ Refer to cardiologist for investigation and management.
- To assess the cause of the sinus bradycardia with both invasive and/or non-invasive diagnostics
• Give more advanced therapeutics in the event when the sinus bradycardia is persistent or recurrent
• Treat reversible causes (see table 75 on page 178)
⇒ Refer to cardiologist for pacemaker implantation (either temporary or permanent depending on patient’s history and clinical examination findings).

ATRIOVENTRICULAR BLOCKS IN GENERAL
First degree:
⇒ No pharmacologic treatment indicated in stable patients; patient requires follow up with ECG monitoring
Second and third degree:
⇒ Pacemakers are beneficial hence patient requires referral to cardiologist

REFERRAL
⇒ Cardiologist referral required in:
  ▪ Symptomatic patients with pulse rate less than 50 bpm
  ▪ Patients with underlying structural heart disease
⇒ Specialist referral based on underlying condition: i.e. neurologist referral in patients with raised intracranial pressure, Endocrinologist referral in patients with hypothyroidism

iii. SICK SINUS SYNDROME (SINUS NODE DYSFUNCTION)
It is caused by fibrosis of the sinus node, which is usually idiopathic and associated with old age.\textsuperscript{10, 11}

DIAGNOSIS
Made by correlating symptoms of end-organ hypoperfusion with occurrence of bradycardia, with or without tachycardia in the presence of ECG abnormalities.
ECG abnormalities in sinus node dysfunction include periods of:
• Sinus bradycardia
• Sinus pauses
• Sinus arrest
• 3rd degree SA nodal exit block
• Supraventricular tachycardia (as part of tachy-brady syndrome)

Presence of ECG findings in the absence of symptoms may be explained by physiologic and pathologic processes such as increased vagal tone during sleep or obstructive sleep apnoea.

Other helpful investigations for health facility with a physician specialist include:
• Serum electrolyte assay (LOE B)
• Holter monitoring
HEALTH FACILITIES AT ALL LEVELS OF CARE

*Figure 38 shows the algorithm for the management of sinus nodal dysfunction.*

ACUTE NON-PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT

- Rapid assessment of ABCs
- Identification and elimination of reversible causes such as medications in symptomatic patients (LOE C)
- Cardiologist referral for:
  - Transvenous temporary or permanent pacemaker in haemodynamically unstable patients who are refractory to medical therapy; this will take care of bradyarrhythmic phase of the disease (LOE C)

- **NOTE:** Atropine should not be used to treat sinus bradycardia in patients who have undergone cardiac transplant (LOE C)

HEALTH FACILITY WITH A PHYSICIAN SPECIALIST

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT

- *iv Atropine* 4microg/kg every 2-4 hours (for the bradyarrhythmias)
  - and/or:
  - *iv Isoproterenol* 0.05- 0.5mcg/kg/min (for the bradyarrhythmias)

In patients with coexisting (paroxysmal) tachyarrhythmias, these should be given after pacemaker has been implanted for the bradycardia episodes:

- Beta-blockers
- Antiarrhythmic medication

HEALTH FACILITY WITH A CARDIOLOGIST

LONG-TERM NON-PHARMACOLOGICAL MANAGEMENT

Permanent dual-chamber pacemakers (LOE B):

Pacemaker therapy is the only effective and definitive therapy for patients with chronic symptomatic sinus node dysfunction. The therapy has not been shown to increase survival in patients. It however relieves symptoms and improves quality of life.

*Table 83: Indications for permanent cardiac pacing in sinus node dysfunction (LOE C) (Adapted from The 2018 Bradycardia Clinical Practice Guidelines)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indications for permanent cardiac pacing in sinus node dysfunction</th>
<th>Compelling indications</th>
<th>Relative indications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Documented symptomatic bradycardia with frequent sinus pause that is symptomatic</td>
<td>Significant symptoms of bradycardia and documented heart rate less than 40 beats per minute without documentation of bradycardia in the presence of symptoms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptomatic sinus bradycardia caused by medication required for medical condition (essential drug therapy)</td>
<td>Syncope of unexplained origin with dysfunction of sinoatrial node discovered or provoked in electrophysiologic studies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptomatic chronotropic incompetence</td>
<td>Minimally symptomatic patients with chronic heart rate less than 40 beats per minute while awake</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.9.7 PREVENTION

Multiple clinical risk factors have been associated with the development of arrhythmias. Thus it may be possible to prevent some arrhythmias by risk factor modification.

Prevention includes:

- Lifestyle modification (refer to chapter 2 of these guidelines on risk factors and chapter 5.1 on hypertension)
- Target control of predisposing and precipitating factors, such as thyrotoxicosis, rheumatic heart diseases and hypertension

5.9.8 PATIENT INFORMATION/EDUCATION

- Patients should be taught to recognise symptoms of arrhythmia and danger signs
- Avoid precipitants such as binge drinking, excessive caffeine intake etc
- Patients on anticoagulants should be told about possible interactions with other medications and diets and when to report
- Patient’s family should be counselled about condition and how to offer support, both life-saving (e.g. CPR) and emotional support
- Asymptomatic family members may require screening in arrhythmias with genetic linkage (LOE C)
REFERENCES


# LIST OF TABLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Table 1</td>
<td>Level of evidence</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 2</td>
<td>Various levels of care and recommended resources</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 3</td>
<td>Traditional and emerging cardiovascular risk factors</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 4</td>
<td>Recommended action per risk category</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 5</td>
<td>General nutritional recommendations</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 6</td>
<td>Recommendations for physical activity</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 7</td>
<td>Sedentary time</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 8</td>
<td>Substance use and abuse</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 9</td>
<td>Target levels for important cardiovascular risk factors</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 10</td>
<td>Categories of statin based on potency</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 11</td>
<td>Risk category and pharmacological intervention</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 12</td>
<td>Causes of dyspnoea</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 13</td>
<td>Differentiating features of cardiac vs. respiratory dyspnoea</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 14</td>
<td>Causes of chest pain</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 15</td>
<td>Clinical classification of angina</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 16</td>
<td>Causes of body swelling</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 17</td>
<td>Causes of haemoptysis</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 18</td>
<td>Causes of syncope</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 19</td>
<td>Symptoms of syncope and seizure</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 20</td>
<td>Causes of palpitation</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 21</td>
<td>General signs of CVD</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 22</td>
<td>Pulse and associated condition</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 23</td>
<td>Heart sounds</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 24</td>
<td>Cardiac murmurs</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 25</td>
<td>Classification of hypertension</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 26</td>
<td>Risk factors of primary or essential hypertension</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 27</td>
<td>Causes of secondary hypertension and important clinical features</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 28</td>
<td>Hypertension cutoff values for office and out-of-office BP measurements</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 29</td>
<td>Non-pharmacological treatment for all levels</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 30</td>
<td>Preferences for antihypertensive drugs by comorbidity for health facility with a physician specialist</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 31</td>
<td>Antihypertensive medications, indications and contraindications</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 32</td>
<td>Antihypertensive medications and the common side effects</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 33</td>
<td>Hypertensive emergency management options</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 34</td>
<td>Intravenous medications used in hypertensive emergencies</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 35</td>
<td>Classification of strokes</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 36</td>
<td>Aetiology of stroke</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 37</td>
<td>Risk factors of stroke</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 38</td>
<td>Indications and contraindications for iv thrombolysis</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 39</td>
<td>ABCD score</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 40</td>
<td>The recognition of stroke in the emergency room (ROSIER) scale</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 41</td>
<td>Pathological changes affecting myocardial blood supply and demand</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 42</td>
<td>Characteristics of angina versus other forms of chest pain</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 43  Functional classification of angina
Table 44  CAD pretest probabilities (%) in patients with stable chest pain symptoms
Table 45  Mimics of angina/other causes of chest pain
Table 46  Causes of acute coronary syndrome
Table 47  How to use the mnemonic "OPQRST"
Table 48  Clinical characteristics of acute coronary syndrome compared with other causes of acute chest pain using the mnemonic "OPQRST"
Table 49  Contraindications to fibrinolytic therapy
Table 50  Commonly used fibrinolytics and their doses
Table 51  Symptoms and signs
Table 52  Diuretics used in heart failure
Table 53  Disease modifying medication in heart failure and their doses
Table 54  Diuretics used in heart failure
Table 55  Disease modifying medication in heart failure and their doses
Table 56  Risk factors for VTE
Table 57  Two-level DVT Well's score
Table 58  Pharmacological treatment
Table 59  Pharmacological treatment of venous thromboembolism
Table 60  Assessment of clinical probability in acute PE
Table 61  Dosage for thrombolysis medication
Table 62  Simplified PESI
Table 63  Dosage of pharmacologic thromboprophylaxis
Table 64  Modified Jones criteria for the diagnosis of ARF
Table 65  Prophylaxis for acute rheumatic fever
Table 66  Aetiology of infective endocarditis based on classification
Table 67  Major and minor criteria for the diagnosis of infective endocarditis
Table 68  Modified Duke's criteria for infective endocarditis, adapted from Li et al.
Table 69  Indications for surgery
Table 70  Recommendations for prophylaxis of infective endocarditis in the highest-risk patients according to the type of at-risk procedure
Table 71  Recommended prophylaxis regimen for high-risk dental procedures in high risk patients
Table 72  Causes of arrhythmias
Table 73  Symptoms and signs of cardiac arrhythmias
Table 74  Management of reversible causes of arrhythmia in health facility without a doctor
Table 75  Management of reversible causes of cardiac arrhythmias in health facility with a doctor
Table 76  Classification of atrial fibrillation
Table 77  The CHA₂DS₂VAS₄ score for stroke risk prediction of anticoagulant therapy (LEVEL A)
Table 78  The HAS–BLED bleeding risk score
Table 79  Oral anticoagulant therapy
Table 80  Acute rate control in atrial fibrillation
Table 81  Long-term rate control
Table 82  Useful medications in acute management of VT and their indications
Table 83  Indications for permanent cardiac pacing in sinus node dysfunction (LOE C)
**LIST OF FIGURES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Figure 1</td>
<td>Worldwide NCD mortalities: 2008 verse 2030</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 2</td>
<td>WHO/ISH CVD risk chart for Africa zone D</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3</td>
<td>Measurement of jugular venous pressure</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 4</td>
<td>Causes of cardiac arrest and sudden cardiac death</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 5</td>
<td>The three phases of cardiac arrest by Westfeldt and Becker</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6</td>
<td>Basic Life Support (BLS) Algorithm</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7</td>
<td>Advance Cardiac Life Support (ACLS) Algorithm</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 8</td>
<td>Threshold for initial management of hypertension</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 9</td>
<td>Antihypertensive regimen for patients</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 10</td>
<td>Non-contrast CT scan showing haemorrhagic stroke</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 11</td>
<td>Non-contrast CT scan showing ischaemic stroke</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 12</td>
<td>Echocardiogram showing an intracardiac embolus at the apex of the left ventricle</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 13</td>
<td>Stroke unit protocol for patient referral</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 14</td>
<td>Chest pain algorithm &amp; summary of management of stable CAD</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 15</td>
<td>Acute coronary syndromes: STEMI, NSTEMI and UA</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 16</td>
<td>Pathway for triaging and managing a patient presenting acute Chest Pain</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 17</td>
<td>Selection of non-ST-elevation acute coronary syndrome (NSTE-ACS) treatment strategy and timing according to initial risk stratification</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 18</td>
<td>Reperfusion strategies in the infarct-related artery according to time from symptoms onset</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 19</td>
<td>Diagnostic algorithm for suspected DVT</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 20</td>
<td>Diagnostic algorithm for pulmonary embolism without shock or hypotension</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 21</td>
<td>Diagnostic algorithm for pulmonary embolism with shock or hypotension</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 22</td>
<td>Westermark sign and Hampton’s Hump, adapted from slideshare.com</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 23</td>
<td>ECG findings in PE</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 24</td>
<td>Algorithm for diagnosis and management of ARF</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 25</td>
<td>Classification of cardiac arrhythmias</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 26</td>
<td>Tachycardia algorithm</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 27</td>
<td>Atrial fibrillation</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 28</td>
<td>Atrial flutter on an ECG showing regular RR intervals and saw-toothed P waves</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 29</td>
<td>ECG showing supraventricular tachycardia</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 30</td>
<td>ECG of ventricular tachycardia</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 31</td>
<td>Algorithm for the management of ventricular tachycardia</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 32</td>
<td>ECG ventricular fibrillation</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 33</td>
<td>ECG showing sinus bradycardia</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 34</td>
<td>ECG showing prolonged PR interval in first degree heart block</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 35</td>
<td>ECG showing second degree heart block</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 36</td>
<td>ECG of complete heart block showing complete dissociation between P waves and QRS complexes</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 37</td>
<td>Bradycardia algorithm, adapted from Liverpool ICU guidelines</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ANNEX 1

**GHS REFERRAL FORM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surname</th>
<th>Other Names</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sex</th>
<th>Date of Birth</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Insurance Status</th>
<th>Insurance (IF INSURANCE STATE IDM)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
<td>Day/Month/Year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>Day/Month/Year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address of Contact Person / Relative (Include Tel No)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### Referral Details

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surname</th>
<th>CLINIC / HOSPITAL REFERRED TO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Presenting Complaint(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Examination Findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Examination Findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Results of Any Investigations Carried Out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatments Given</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Referring Officer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surname</th>
<th>Referring Officer Referring</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position of Officer Referring</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Receiving Clinician

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surname</th>
<th>Receiving Officer Receiving</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position of Officer Receiving</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comments (Please write summary of final diagnosis and treatment given)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## GHANA HEALTH SERVICE REFERRAL FEEDBACK FORM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PATIENT REG NO.......................</th>
<th>SERIAL NO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DAY MONTH YEAR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Kindly fill this form in duplicate and return to the facility which referred this client.

### HEALTH FACILITY INFORMATION

- **NAME & ADDRESS OF HEALTH FACILITY PROVIDING FEEDBACK**
- **NAME & ADDRESS OF HEALTH FACILITY TO WHICH FEEDBACK IS BEING SENT**
- **NAME AND POSITION OF CLINICAL WHO RECEIVED CLIENT**

### PATIENT / CLIENT INFORMATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surname</th>
<th>Other Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sex</th>
<th>Date of Birth</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Insurance Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
<td>DAY MONTH YEAR</td>
<td></td>
<td>UNSURE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>INSURES ID NO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name and Address of Contact Personal Relative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Telephone No of Contact Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date of Referral</th>
<th>Date of Arrival at Referral Facility</th>
<th>Diagnosis on Referral</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DAY MONTH YEAR</td>
<td>DAY MONTH YEAR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Final Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medical Management Treatment Given (Please write how patient was managed)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Outcome (Please tick)</th>
<th>Discharged</th>
<th>Died</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DAY MONTH YEAR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DAY MONTH YEAR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If client is being referred back to another facility on discharged please provide advance for further management and any other recommendation use extra sheet if need be.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Next Review Date (Where Applicable)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of Officer Providing Feedback</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signature</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contact (S) of Officer Providing Feedback</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTES
NOTES